English in Action Grammar & Vocabulary Glossary
First published by Hamilton House Publishers, 2011

Hamilton House Publishers Ltd
2 Prespas Street
Nicosia
1082 Cyprus

E-mail: enquiries@hamiltonhousepublishers.com
Website: www.hamiltonhousepublishers.com

Text, design, artwork and characters © Hamilton House Publishers, 2011


All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the publishers. Any person who carries out any unauthorised act in relation to this publication may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damages.

Acknowledgements
The publishers would like to thank Julia Gagkou for her help with the Greek translation.
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | 4    | Present Simple/Present Continuous  
|      |      | Present Perfect Simple/Present Perfect Continuous  
|      |      | Verbs, Nouns, Adjectives and Adverbs |
| 2    | 14   | Past Simple/Past Continuous  
|      |      | Used to/Would  
|      |      | Past Perfect Simple/Past Perfect Continuous |
| 3    | 25   | Future Simple/Future Continuous/be going to  
|      |      | Future Perfect Simple/Future Perfect Continuous  
|      |      | Other Ways to Express the Future  
|      |      | Question Tags |
| 4    | 35   | Articles/Countable and Uncountable Nouns  
|      |      | Quantifiers and Determiners |
| 5    | 45   | Modals/be able to/Semi-Modals |
| 6    | 55   | The Passive  
|      |      | Other Passive Constructions |
| 7    | 63   | Making Comparisons  
|      |      | Relative Clauses |
| 8    | 71   | Conditionals  
|      |      | Other Conditional Forms |
| 9    | 79   | Wishes and Regrets  
|      |      | Preferences |
| 10   | 87   | Reported Speech |
| 11   | 95   | Gerunds and Infinitives  
|      |      | So, such, too, enough and very  
|      |      | Demonstratives |
| 12   | 102  | Concession and Contrast, in case  
|      |      | Purpose and Reason  
|      |      | Manner  
|      |      | It, there, that, what |
| 13   | 111  | Causative, Indirect Questions  
|      |      | Pronouns, Possessives and Possession  
|      |      | Adjective Order |
| 14   | 119  | Participle Clauses  
|      |      | Verbs + that clause  
|      |      | Cleft Sentences, Adverbs, no matter |
| 15   | 127  | Inversion 1 & 2 |
1.03 actions speak louder than words (idm) – (saying) what you do is more important than what you say • The mayor said he would make the city safer if he was elected, but crime continues to increase. Actions speak louder than words! I’m not going to vote for him again. ➣ ta ἔργα μιλούν δυνατότερα από τα λόγια

1.04 tell lies (v phr) – lie, intentionally say things that are not true • He tells lies so often that it’s hard to know when he is saying something that is true. ➣ Opp: tell the truth ➣ λέω ψέματα

1.05 talk nonsense (idm) – say things that are not logical or that do not have any real meaning • He isn’t really thinking about quitting his job. He was just talking nonsense to see what you would say! ➣ λέω ανοησίες

1.06 accent (n) – 1. (C) the way sb pronounces the words of a language, which shows which country or place sb comes from • He finds it hard to understand people with a strong Scottish accent. / I can’t tell where the actor is from. I’ve heard him speak English with a number of different accents. 2. (C) a distinct emphasis placed on a word or syllable • British speakers pronounce the word ‘garage’ with the accent on the first syllable (GAR-age), while Americans place the accent on the second syllable (gar-AGE). 3. (C) a mark or symbol placed over a letter in some languages (e.g., to show emphasis) • Many people write the word ‘café’ with an accent on the final ‘e’. ➣ accent (v), accented (adj) ➣ 1. προφορά 2. έμφασε 3. τόνος

1.07 pronunciation (n) – (C/U) the way in which a language or a particular word or sound is spoken • There are many differences in pronunciation between American and British English. / The combination ‘ough’ has different pronunciations in English, as shown by the words ‘through’, ‘enough’ and ‘though’. ➣ pronounce (v), pronounced (adj), pronounceable (adj) ➣ προφορά

1.08 sign (n) – 1. (C) a symbol with a particular meaning • In mathematics, the sign = means ‘is equal to’. 2. (C) a movement (e.g., of the hands, arms or head) intended to have a particular meaning • I knew he was pleased when he gave me the “thumbs up” sign. 3. (C) piece of metal, wood or plastic with words on it ➣ The fog was so thick that they couldn’t see the signs on the road. 4. sign language (n phr) – system of communication that uses hand, arm, and finger movements (i.e., signs) to express meaning • Mark is deaf, so he and his parents communicate with sign language. ➣ sign (n, v) ➣ 1. σύμβολο, σημάδι 2. νοηματική γλώσσα, γλώσσα κομματιών

A (page 6)

Similar but different: say, speak, tell, talk ➣ As you’ve probably discovered, these seemingly simple words are closely related in meaning, so it is easy to confuse them. One thing that students often confuse is the basic patterns that the words say and tell follow: e.g., say sth to sb vs. tell sb sth and tell sth to sb. Say and tell can also be used to mean ‘give an order’, but again the patterns are different. Tell is immediately followed by a personal object or pronoun, while said is not: e.g., He told me to wait here is not: e.g., He said to wait. / He told lies so often that it’s hard to know when he is saying something that is true. I can’t tell where the actor is from. I’ve heard him speak English with a number of different accents.

A further challenge is that all of these words are used in a wide range of set phrases and expressions where only one of the words is possible. For example, it is correct to say that someone speaks English (not talks English) and that someone tells lies (not says lies). This is one of those tricky areas of learning English where there are no rules to help you. Following is a list of the phrases and expressions with say, speak, tell, talk that are practised in this unit.

1.01 Don’t/not say a word (about sth) (to sb) (idm) ➣ don’t/not say anything (about sth) (to sb) • I’ll tell you a secret if you promise not to say a word about it to anyone. ➣ να μην πεις ένα παλιό

1.02 speak fluent French (v phr) ➣ (same as speak French fluently) be able to speak French smoothly and comfortably (without difficulty) • After a year in Paris, he could speak fluent French. ➣ μιλώ γαλλικά έργα έναντι με ευφράδεια

1.03 actions speak louder than words (idm) ➣ (saying) what you do is more important than what you say • The mayor said he would make the city safer if he was elected, but crime continues to increase. Actions speak louder than words! I’m not going to vote for him again. ➣ τα έργα μιλούν δυνατότερα από τα λόγια

1.04 tell lies (v phr) ➣ lie, intentionally say things that are not true • He tells lies so often that it’s hard to know when he is saying something that is true. ➣ Opp: tell the truth ➣ λέω ψέματα
1.09 signal (n) – 1. (C) sth (e.g., a sound, movement or action) intended to send a message to sb; similar to sign (2) • If you see someone waving their arms in the air, it’s often a signal that the person needs help. 2. smoke signal (n phr) – a signal made with smoke • In ancient times, the Greeks and Chinese were among those who used smoke signals to send messages over long distances. ➢ signal (v)
   1. σήμα, σήματα 2. σήματα καπνού

1.10 speaker (n) ➔ native speaker (n phr) – sb who has spoken a particular language since early childhood • Georgia grew up speaking Greek, but her English is so good that most people think she’s a native speaker. ➢ speak (v), spoken (adj) ➔ κάνοντες τη μητρική γλώσσα

1.11 tongue (n) 1. soft body part inside the mouth used for tasting, licking and speaking • She burnt her tongue when she tasted the hot soup. 2. (formal, literary) language • Some people say French is a romantic-sounding tongue. 3. mother tongue (n phr) – (same as native language or native tongue) the first language that sb learns to speak as a child • I’m not sure where he’s from, but it’s clear from his accent that English is not his mother tongue. ➢ 1. γλώσσα 2. γλώσσα μητρική 3. μητρική γλώσσα

C (page 6)

1.12 department (n) – (C) one part of a large organisation such as a university, hospital, business or shop • Rita works in the X-ray department of London Hospital. / Let’s go to Marks & Spencer. Everything in the shoe department is on sale this week! ➢ τμήμα

1.13 laboratory (n) – (C) (also: lab) a place where scientific research or medical testing is done • One of the research scientists in the laboratory where she works won the Nobel Prize for Medicine several years ago. ➢ (επιστημονικό) εργαστήριο

1.14 surgery (n) – 1. (U) branch of medicine that involves cutting open a person’s body to remove or repair a diseased or injured body part • Dr Smith specialises in heart surgery. 2. (U) medical treatment involving the removal or repair of a diseased or injured body part; also referred to as an operation • His leg was broken so badly that it required surgery. 3. doctor’s surgery (n phr) – (C) (British English) room or house where a doctor sees patients; same as doctor’s office in American English • I’ll be at the doctor’s surgery this morning for my annual check-up. ➢ surgeon (n), surgical (adj), surgically (adv) 1. χειρουργός 2. χειρουργική επέμβαση 3. χειρουργείο

1.15 theatre (n) ➔ operating theatre (n phr) – (C) place where a surgeon operates (i.e., performs surgery) (see previous entry) • If the surgery goes as planned, the patient will be out of the operating theatre in under two hours. ➢ χειρουργείο

1.16 ward (n) – (C) part of a hospital where patients with similar illnesses or needs are taken care of (e.g., surgical ward, children’s ward, cardiac ward) • As a student nurse, she spent a month in each ward of the hospital. Her favourite was the maternity ward, where mothers and their newborn babies were cared for. ➢ θάλαμος, πτέρυγα (νοσοκομείου)

D (page 7)

1.17 income (n) – (C/U) money earned over a period of time (e.g., from a job and/or investments and other sources unrelated to work) • Both of Timmy’s parents work, so his family has two incomes. / His yearly income is 30,000 euros. ➢ εισόδημα

1.18 pay (n) – (U) the money paid to someone for regular work • If I get an increase in pay next year, I’ll be able to buy a car. / Could you tell me what the starting pay is? ➢ pay (v) ➔ πληρωμή, αποδοχές

1.19 pension (n) – (C) monthly payment made to people who reach retirement age • Many older people find it hard to live on the small pensions they receive. ➢ pensioner (n) ➔ σύνταξη

1.20 salary (n) – (CAU) the money that employees are paid (usually monthly or bi-weekly) for doing their job • She needs to find a better-paying job as her monthly salary barely covers her rent and other living expenses. / It’s been two years since he received an increase in salary. ➢ salaried (adj) ➔ μισθός

1.21 wage (n) – (CAU) money that an employee is paid for a certain period of time (e.g., for an hour, day, or week) • We pay the gardener a daily wage of £50. / In the United States, the minimum wage is $7.25 an hour. / (pl n) The factory workers will go on strike if they don’t get a 6% rise in wages next year. ➢ χρηματοδότηση, ειδικοποιήσεις αποδοχές

Similar but different: income, pay, salary, wage – The word pay is used generally to refer to the money one earns from an employer. The word salary is often used for the money made by professional employees and people who work in offices. It is also often used for the money one makes annually from a job (e.g., an annual salary of 30,000 euros). The word wage or wages is more often used for the money earned by manual or unskilled workers. The word income refers more generally to all the money that one earns: from a job and from other sources such as bank interest, stocks, and/or property rental.

E (page 7)

1.22 certificate (n) – (C) an official document stating that particular facts are true; also, an official document given to sb to prove that they have completed a particular course of study or passed a certain exam • He’s been studying English for
seven years and has received certificates for all of the exams he's passed. ➢ certification (n), certify (v)

1.23 degree (n) – (C) an academic title earned by students who complete a course of study at a university or college • My sister has a master's degree in English literature from Oxford University. • (навипоштимико) πτυχίο

1.24 diploma (n) – (C) an official document showing that sb has finished a course of study • The diploma on his wall is proof that he has a bachelor's degree from Cambridge University. • δίπλωμα

1.25 qualification (n) – (C) education, certificate, special training, or skill which makes sb suited to do a certain job • Her qualifications included proficiency in French and English and a degree in computer science. ➢ qualify (n) qualified (adj), qualifying (adj) • προαγωγή

1.26 skill (n) – 1. (U) the ability to do something well, expertise • It takes years for a surgeon to develop enough skill and knowledge to operate on patients. 2. (C) a particular ability • The well-known English exam tests students' reading, writing, listening and speaking skills. ➢ skilled (adj) • 1. επιδεξιότητα 2. σκοπέλισμα

1.27 talent (n) – (C/U) the natural ability to do sth well • The musician has great talent. / Intelligence and a great sense of humour are among her many talents. ➢ talented (adj) • ταλέντο

F (page 7)

1.28 comprehensive (adj) – complete, wide-ranging, including all or nearly all elements of sth • She enjoys the BBC website for its comprehensive coverage of international news. 2. comprehensive school (n phr) – (UK) secondary school designed for students of all abilities • Comprehensive schools in the United Kingdom are similar to middle schools and high schools in the United States. ➢ comprehensiveness (n), comprehend (v), comprehensively • 1. περιεκτικός 2. σκοπέλισμα εκπαίδευσεις

1.29 compulsory (adj) – required by a law or a rule • The use of seatbelts is now compulsory in many countries. ➢ compel (v), compulsorily (adv) • υποχρεωτικός

1.30 intensive (adj) – involving a lot of work or activity done in a short period of time • if you want to learn a language quickly, you should take an intensive course that meets for at least 20 hours a week. ➢ intensiveness (n), intensively (adv) • εντενσός

1.31 optional (adj) – not required (but that may be chosen voluntarily) • Tomorrow's class is optional; if you prefer to prepare for the test on your own, you don't have to come. ➢ option (n), opt (v), optionally (adv) • προαιρετικός

G (page 7)

1.32 promotion (n) – (C/U) the action of or an act of raising sb or being raised to a higher or more important position (e.g., in a company) • If you keep up the good work, you are sure to receive a promotion this year. / The captain is in line for promotion to colonel this year. ➢ promote (v), promoted (adj) • προαγωγή

1.33 redundancy (n) – (C/U) a case of or the act of releasing sb or being released from a job because there is no more work • The closing of the factory will result in hundreds of redundancies. / Hundreds of workers will face redundancy if the factory closes. ➢ redundant (adj), redundantly (adv) • απολύσεις

Note: In the USA, the word lay-off is used instead of redundancy • διαθεσιμότητα, υπεραριθμία

1.34 resignation (n) – (C/U) the action of or an act of giving up one's job or position; also, a letter or spoken statement to an employer giving up one's job • The president's sudden resignation shocked the nation. / When the scandal was uncovered, the politician handed in his resignation. ➢ resign (v) • παραίτηση

1.35 retirement (n) – (C/U) the action or an act of leaving one's job and not working any longer (e.g., because you have reached a certain age); also, (U) the period of life after sb stops working • After 40 years of factory work, Jim's grandfather is looking forward to his retirement next year. / Some people find they are busier in retirement than they were when they were working. ➢ retire (n), retired (adj) • απόλυση, αποστασία

1.36 sack (n) ➢ get the sack (idm) – (informal) be fired, be told one can no longer work for a company (e.g., because of sth one has done wrong) • You'll get the sack if you continue to disagree with everything the boss says. • απολύσεις, μου δίνουν τα παπούτσια στο χέρι

1.37 transfer (n) – (C) the act of moving from one place, group or job to another • She works in Edinburgh now, but she's hoping to get a transfer to her company's office in London. ➢ transfer (v), transferable (adj) • μεταθέσεως

H (page 6)

1.38 absence (n) – (U) the state of not being present in a place; (C) an occasion or period of time when sb is not present • Can anyone explain Michael's absence? He should have been here hours ago. / The teenager's parents were surprised to learn that their son had more than ten absences from school last month. ➢ absent (adj). ➢ Opp: presence • ανουαλία
1.39 **attendance** (n) – (U) the state or act of going to and being present in a place (e.g., school, work, a concert); also, the number of people present at an organised event • Attendance at the meeting is a must; the boss expects everyone to be there. / The organisers estimate that attendance at the concert was about 3,000 people. ➣ attendant (n), attender (n), attendee (n), attend (v) ❖ παρακολούθηση, παρουσία(σε τάξη, συγκέντρωση)

1.40 **attention** (n) ➔ pay attention (to sb/sth) (idm) – take careful notice of sb/sth (e.g., by looking or listening carefully) • It's important for learners to pay attention to the way prepositions are used in English. / Skilled photographers understand the importance of paying careful attention to light and shadow. ❖ προσέχω

1.41 **participation (in sth)** (n) – the act of doing sth or taking part in sth, usually with others • Language teachers encourage class participation as a means of getting their students to speak more comfortably. / Everyone learned a lot from the expert’s participation in the discussion. ➣ participant (n), participate (v), participatory (adj) ❖ συμμετοχή

---

**Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 8)**

**A**

1.42 **break down** (phr v) – (of a relationship or process) fail • Their marriage broke down because they fought all the time and couldn’t agree on anything. ➣ breakdown (n), broken-down (adj) ❖ διακόπτομαι. See 4.45 for alternative meaning.

1.43 **bring in** (phr v) – introduce (e.g., into fashion or practice) • The Prime Minister has promised to bring in tax reforms that will stimulate the economy. ❖ εισάγω

1.44 **bring out** (phr v) – make clear (e.g., by explaining or emphasising certain characteristics) • It takes a really good actor to bring out the depth of Hamlet's character. ❖ φανερώνω, αποκαλύπτω

1.45 **catch on** (phr v) – understand • This smart phone is simple to operate, so I’m sure you’ll catch on quickly. ❖ καταλαβαίνω, αντιλαμβάνομαι. See 5.50 for alternative meaning.

1.46 **drop out** (phr v) – leave (a course, organisation, or competition) • When his father died, he had to drop out of university and get a job to help support his family. / She injured her knee and had to drop out of the race. ➣ drop-out (n) ❖ εγκαταλείπω (π.χ., σπουδές, δουλειά ή αγώνα)

1.47 **face up to** (phr v) – accept courageously • Sooner or later, we all must face up to the fact that we will not live forever. ❖ παραδέχομαι

1.48 **get across** (phr v) – communicate clearly • The look on her students’ faces told her that she had failed to get across the difficult grammar point. ❖ κάνω κτ κατανοητό

1.49 **get at** (phr v) – suggest (usually indirectly), hint at • Are you implying that your brother stole the money? Is that what you’re getting at? ❖ υπονοώ

1.50 **get on with** (phr v) – (same as get along with) have a good relationship with • If you can’t get on with your boss, you probably should start looking for another job. ❖ τα πάω καλά με κάποιον

1.51 **pick up** (phr v) – learn (especially informally, without taking lessons) • She doesn’t know much Spanish, but whenever she goes to Spain she manages to pick up a few new words. ❖ μαθαίνω εμπειρικά. See 1.127 and 4.54 for alternative meanings.

---

**Prepositions 1 (page 8)**

Use the chart to improve your preposition usage. To start, cover the right-hand column with a piece of paper. Look at the first item in the left-hand column and see if you can come up with the phrase in the right-hand column. Check each answer by uncovering the appropriate line on the right. Repeat with the other items. Go through the chart several times until you are comfortable with the phrases.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appeal</td>
<td>appeal to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply</td>
<td>apply for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translate</td>
<td>translate sth from Greek into English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confidence</td>
<td>have confidence in sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh/shout</td>
<td>laugh/shout at sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>deal with sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congratulate</td>
<td>congratulate sb on sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be good</td>
<td>be good at sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
<td>learn sth by heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be proud</td>
<td>be proud of sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be responsible</td>
<td>be responsible for sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provide</td>
<td>provide sb with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
<td>care for sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bored</td>
<td>get/be bored with sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retire</td>
<td>retire from sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exception</td>
<td>with the exception of sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duty</td>
<td>be on duty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are probably familiar with some of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

1.52 appeal (to sb) (v) – be interesting or desirable to sb/sth • The idea of a year-long trip around the world appeals to me. / The trip appeals to his sense of adventure. ➢ appeal (n), appealing (adj), appealingly (adv) ❖ ἔκκλησις

1.53 apply (for sth) (v) – make a formal application or request • He has applied for three jobs so far. ➢ application (n), applicable (adj), applied (adj) ❖ κανώ αίτηση

1.54 confidence (n) ➢ have confidence (in sb/sth) (v phr) – have a feeling of trust in yourself or others • The coach had confidence in his team’s ability to win the championship. ➢ confide (v), confident (adj), confidently (adv) ❖ αυτοπεποίθησις, (α) χαρακτηρισμένος ἐμπιστοσύνη

1.55 deal (with sb/sth) (v) – cope with sth/sb, handle sb/sth • She finds it difficult to deal with her full-time job and the needs of her four children. ❖ αναμεταφέρω, τα βγάζω πέρα

1.56 heart (n) ➢ by heart (idm) – from memory • She learned the poem by heart when she was a child, and she can still recite it today. ❖ απ’ έξω

1.57 proud (adj) ➢ be proud (of sb/sth) (v phr) – feel deep pleasure or satisfaction in sb/sth • Timmy’s parents were proud of him for winning the race. / You should be proud of yourself. You did a great job. ➢ pride (n), pride oneself on sth (v), proudly (adv) ❖ είμαι περήφανος

1.58 responsible (adj) ➢ be responsible (for sb/sth) (v phr) – (of a person) be the person in charge of sb/sth, be the one who has a specific job to do sth • The sales manager is responsible for hiring and training new sales representatives. ➢ responsibility (n), responsibly (adv). ➢ Opp: irresponsible. ❖ είμαι υπεύθυνος (για καντοκτόνο)

1.59 provide (sb with sth) (v) – give sb sth that is needed, make sth available to sb • The hotel clerk provided us with a map of the city. ➢ provision (n) ❖ εφοδιάζω, παρέχω

1.60 care for (phr v) – take care of, look after (e.g., a child or elderly person, sb who is ill) • When her husband died, the old woman had no one to care for her. ❖ φροντίζω
1.61 retire (from sth) (v) – leave sth (e.g., a job) and stop working (often because of age or illness)
   • The 65-year-old teacher is in excellent health, so she doesn’t plan on retiring from her job any time soon. > retirement (n), retired (adj) ♦ παίρνω σύνταξη, αποχωρώ (από την υπηρεσία)

1.62 exception (n) ➔ with the exception of (prep) – except for, other than, apart from • With the exception of Marta, who was home with a bad cold, all of my friends were in class today. ♦ εκτός από

1.63 take off (phr v) – 1. (informal) leave in a hurry, run away • The thief grabbed the woman’s bag and took off down the street. 2. (aeroplanes, birds, etc.) fly into the air • The aeroplane took off as soon as all the passengers were seated. > takeoff (n)
   ♦ 1. φεύγω, βιαστικά, το σκάω, δραπετεύω
   2. απογειώνομαι

1.64 get off (phr v) – leave sth (e.g., a train, bus or taxi)
   • I told the taxi driver that I wanted to get off at the next stop. ♦ κατεβαίνω, αποβιβάζομαι

1.65 set out (phr v) – begin a journey • We agreed to set out at 6 a.m. to avoid rush-hour traffic.
   ♦ ξεκινώ

3 A, B, C, D

1.66 highly (adv) – (usually used as an intensifier, for emphasis, before an adj/adv) greatly, to a high degree • To be a scientist or a mathematician, you need to be highly intelligent. / She is the most highly paid manager in the company. / Both brothers are highly talented musicians. > height (n), high (adj)
   ♦ πάρα πολύ, εξαιρέτικα

1.67 completely (adv) – in every way possible, totally, entirely, absolutely • Their home was completely destroyed in the fire. Nothing was left standing.
   > completion (n), complete (v, adj) εντελώς, τελείως, απολύτως

1.68 fully (adv) – 1. in every way possible, totally, entirely • I fully agree that we should give the job to the first person we interviewed. 2. at least, no less than • Fully 70% of voters think the Prime Minister is doing an excellent job. > fullness (n), full (adj)
   ♦ 1. εντελώς, τελείως, απολύτως
   2. τουλάχιστον, πλήρως

1.69 totally (adv) – in every possible way, completely, entirely, absolutely • I totally agree that John deserves a promotion. ♦ εντελώς, τελείως, απολύτως

The words completely, fully and totally are so close in meaning that they can often be used interchangeably: e.g., I completely / fully / totally understand. OR She is completely / totally / fully in control of the situation. OR The detective is completely / fully / totally convinced that Mr Smith is the murderer.

Fully, however, sometimes has its own set of rules. For example, you might hear native speakers say that a child is fully grown or that a disease affects fully 30 percent of the population. In these cases, completely and totally could not be substituted. To confuse things further, sometimes totally and completely can be used interchangeably, but fully cannot: e.g., His story is totally / completely untrue! OR I find the idea totally / completely insane!

The lesson to be learned here is that there are no set rules when it comes to collocation. Learners need to keep their eyes and ears open, and pay close attention to the way native speakers speak and write the language.

4 D For A, B, C, see Vocabulary 1: E.

1.70 licence (n) ➔ (C) (in American English: license) an official document that gives sb permission to do, own or use sth • He can’t drive us to the airport in your car because he doesn’t have a driver’s licence. / In many countries, restaurants must have a special licence to sell alcoholic drinks. ➔ license (v), licensed (adj) △ δεξία

6 C For A, B, D, see Vocabulary 1: H.

1.71 track (n) ➔ track record (n phr) – (C) the history of one’s past performance (e.g., one’s achievements and/or failures) • The writer has an excellent track record; all of his books have been best-sellers. ✪ (μεταφ) επίδοση του παρελθόντος, ιστορικό (επιτυχίες/αποτυχίες, κτλ)
Vocabulary 2: Collocations (page 12)

Make, Do and Take
You are probably familiar with many of the phrases in the chart. Following are some of the ones that you might need help with because their meaning is more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

1.77 make certain/sure (idm) – find out or check that sth is true or that sth is the way it is supposed to be. Tom told me he was thinking about coming to the party, but you’d better call him to make certain he’ll be there.

1.78 make a difference (idm) – 1. have an important effect, play a meaningful role in sth. Without the teacher’s help, he wouldn’t have passed the exam; she really made a difference! 2. κάνω τη διαφορά, παιξίμα μεγάλο ρόλο

1.79 make an excuse (v phr) – (often true or invented) to explain or defend one’s behaviour. He’s always making interesting excuses for not having his homework: today he told the teacher that his dog ran off with his composition and buried it in the garden.

1.80 make fun of (idm) – tease, laugh at sb/sth (usually in an unkind way). She cries whenever her brother makes fun of her for being overweight.

1.81 make an impression (on sb) (v phr) – leave sb with a certain feeling about sb/sth. You’ll make a better impression at the interview if you wear a suit instead of those old jeans!

1.82 make a profit (v phr) – show a financial gain, make money (e.g., from business activities or an investment). Many companies lose money in their first year of operation, but the successful new software company has made a profit of more than a million pounds.

1.83 make room (for sb/sth) (idm) – move sth/oneself so that sb/sth can enter or occupy a place. She gave away some of her old books to make room in the bookcase for her CD collection.

1.84 make sb’s day (idm) – make sb feel happy, be the best part of sb’s day. A phone call from her grandchildren always makes her day.

1.85 make up one’s mind (idm) – decide, make a decision. She’s not sure what she wants to be. She hasn’t made up her mind yet.

1.86 make one’s way (idm) – go, travel (often at a slow pace). It took us over an hour to make our way to the top of the mountain.

1.87 do damage (to sth) (v phr) – harm or spoil sth. The 9.0 earthquake did unimaginable damage to the towns and villages in the area.

1.88 do one’s duty (idm) – do one’s job; fulfil one’s legal or moral responsibility. The police officer who saved the child’s life said that he was not a hero; he was just doing his duty.

1.89 do sb a favour (v phr) – do sb nice or kind in order to help sb out; same as do a good turn for sb. Could you do me a favour and drive me to work today? My car’s being repaired.
### Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 13)

#### Phrasal Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.99 get by (on sth)</strong> (phr v) – survive • The young married couple manage to get by on their small salaries by spending their money carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.100 go over</strong> (phr v) – check • It's always a good idea to go over your compositions to check for spelling and grammar mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.101 keep on</strong> (phr v) – retain (i.e., keep) in employment • In times of economic crisis, companies have to make hard decisions about how many employees to keep on and how many they will make redundant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.102 put in for</strong> (phr v) – apply for • The company requires that all employees must put in for their summer holidays at least a month in advance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.103 put through to</strong> (phr v) – connect by phone • 'I'd like to speak to Dr Jones. Could you put me through to him please?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.104 set up</strong> (phr v) – establish, start (e.g., a company) • After working as a chef at a French restaurant for several years, he's decided to set up a restaurant of his own.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.105 take in</strong> (phr v) – absorb (e.g., ideas or information) • The museum guide gave us so much information that it was hard to take in everything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.106 take on</strong> (phr v) – give employment to • The department store always takes on a number of temporary sales assistants during the busy Christmas season.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.107 take to</strong> (phr v) – like • He's never played golf before, but I'm sure he'll take to the game quickly as he's good at sports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.108 work out</strong> (phr v) – solve, figure out • He's trying to work out how he's going to pay his rent while he's unemployed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You are probably familiar with some of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loss</td>
<td>be at a loss to do sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>out of date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tired</td>
<td>be tired of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>out of work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay attention</td>
<td>pay attention to sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argue</td>
<td>argue with sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get annoyed</td>
<td>get annoyed with sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intention</td>
<td>have no intention of doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>be out of the question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hour</td>
<td>by the hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>work as sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business</td>
<td>be away on business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afraid</td>
<td>be afraid of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order</td>
<td>be out of order</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.109 **be at a loss (to do sth)** (v phr) – not know what to do or say • *When he heard the bad news, he was at a loss to know what to say.* ❖ δεν ξέρω τι να κάνω, τα έχω χαμένα

1.111 **out of work** (adj, adv) – unemployed, without work, out of a job • *My friend has been out of work since the company he worked for closed last year.* ❖ Opp: employed ❖ άνεργος

1.112 **pay attention (to sb/sth)** (idm) – see 1.40

1.113 **argue (with sb)** (v) – speak angrily to sb, disagree with sb and have a fight with words • *If you continue to argue with the boss, you won’t have a job for very long.* ❖ argument (n), argumentative (adj), arguable (adj), arguably (adv) ❖ λογομαχώ, διατείνομαι

1.114 **at every opportunity** (prep phr) – as often as possible, every chance one gets • *Mrs Allen believes in praising her students at every opportunity.* ❖ σε κάθε ευκαιρία, πολύ συχνά

1.115 **annoyed** (adj) ➔ **get annoyed (with sb)** (v phr) – become displeased or irritated (i.e., a little angry) with sb • *Some teachers get annoyed with students who ask questions that aren’t related to the lesson.* ❖ annoyance (n), annoy (v), annoying (adj) ❖ εκνευρίζομαι

1.116 **intention (n) ➔ have no intention of (doing sth)** (v phr) – have no plan to do sth • *Her parents are upset because they told them that she had no intention of going to university.* ❖ Opp: have every intention of doing sth, intend to do sth ❖ δεν έχω σκοπό να κάνω κτ

1.117 **out of the question** (idm) – so unlikely or impossible that no discussion is needed • *Don has been unemployed for the past six months so buying a new car is out of the question for him.* ❖ αδύνατος, εκτός συζήτησης

1.118 **by the hour** (prep phr) – hourly, on an hourly basis • *Our gardener gets paid by the hour. If he works five hours at 10 euros an hour, he’ll earn 50 euros.* ❖ με την ώρα
1.119 **business** (n) ➔ **be away on business** (idm) – be absent from one’s usual place of work in order to do business in another city or place. *The boss is away on business. She’s attending meetings at our head office in London this week.*

1.120 **out of order** (idm) – (of machines) broken, unable to operate. *The photocopier is out of order, so you won’t be able to make copies until it’s repaired.*

### English in Use (page 16)

#### Idioms

**A**

1.121 **see eye to eye** (idm) – agree with each other.
- Sarah and her brother never saw eye to eye when they were children, but as adults they have a much better relationship.

1.122 **get the picture** (idm) – understand what sb means.
- *I can’t say anything else now, but you’ll get the picture as soon as I get home.*

1.123 **pull your socks up** (idm) – try hard to improve.
- *If you don’t start pulling your socks up, you are not going to pass the final exam.*

### Which meaning? (page 16)

**A**

1.127 **pick up** (phr v) – 1. learn (especially informally, without taking lessons).
- *She doesn’t know much Spanish, but whenever she goes to Spain she manages to pick up a few new words.*
  2. lift from the ground.
- *When the old woman dropped her handbag, I bent down and picked it up for her.*
Vocabulary 1 (pages 20-21)

A (page 20)

2.01 annoy (v) – 1. irritate sb, make sb a little angry
   • The child's constant questions were beginning to annoy her. 2. get annoyed (with sb) (v phr) – become displeased or irritated (i.e., a little angry) with sb • Some teachers get annoyed with students who ask questions that aren’t related to the lesson. ➢ annoyance (n), annoyed (adj), annoying (adj), annoyingly (adv) 1. ενοχλέω, πειράζω 2. εκενοχλώμαι

2.02 bother (v) – 1. annoy, disturb • Don't bother your father when he's trying to work. It bothers me when you eat with your mouth open. ➢ bother (n), bothered (adj), bothersome (adj) 2. bother to do sth (v phr) – take the time and trouble to do sth; often used in negative sentences • (affirmative) If you had bothered to call your parents to say you'd be late, they wouldn't be so angry with you. / (negative) My husband said he'd told you about the party, so I didn't bother to send you an invitation. 3. be bothered over/about sth (v phr) – be upset or worried about • He's a grown man now. His mother shouldn't be bothered over where he is every second of the day. ➢ 1. ενοχλώ, σκοτίζω 2. μπάινω στον κόπο 3. σκοτίζομαι για κτ, σενανκωρίζωμαι

2.03 disturb (v) – 1. (of things) move sth from its original place, put sth out of order • Someone had disturbed the items on her desk while she was at the meeting. 2. interfere with, interrupt • The noise of the traffic disturbed his thoughts. 3. cause sb to become upset or anxious • The phone call from the police disturbed her terribly. 4. interrupt or bother sb when one is trying to work, sleep or rest • Please hold all my phone calls, and don’t disturb me unless it’s an emergency. / Please lower your voice so you don’t disturb the baby. ➢ disturbance (n), disturbed (adj), disturbing (adj), disturbingly (adv) 1. ταράσσω 2. διακόπτω 3. ανακατεύω 4. ενοχλήω

2.04 interfere (in sth) (v) – (of people) get involved in and try to influence a situation that doesn’t concern you • Who I marry is my decision, so please don’t interfere. / She respects her parents because they have never tried to interfere in her life. ➢ interference (n), interfering (adj) • επεμβαίνω, ανακατεύω

2.05 interrupt (v) – (of people) say or do sth that makes sb/people stop what they are doing • If you stop interrupting me, I’ll tell you exactly why I don’t agree with you. / I’m sorry to interrupt the meeting, but the boss needs to speak to you immediately. ➢ interruption (n) • διακόπτω

2.06 offend (v) – insult or upset sb, hurt sb’s feelings
   • We'll offend her if we leave the party so early. ➢ offence (n), offensive (adj), offensively • προαβάλλω

2.07 provoke (v) ➢ provoke sth (v) – cause sth (e.g., a reaction or strong emotion) • The comedian’s jokes provoked laughter in the audience. / The politician’s racist remarks provoked strong criticism. 2. provoke sb (v) – make sb angry or annoyed • I tried not to pay attention to his insults, but he managed to provoke me until I finally lost my temper. 3. provoke sb to do sth / provoke sb into doing sth (v phr) – cause sb to react in a strong or angry way • The reviewer’s unfair comments provoked me to write an angry letter to the newspaper. ➢ provocation (n), provoked (adj), provocative (adj), provocatively (adv) ➢ 1. προκαταλήψω 2. εμπιστεύομαι 3. εξωθώ κάποιον κατά εμένα

B (page 20)

2.08 confide (in sb) (v) – tell sb one’s secrets or private thoughts; similar to tell sb sth in confidence
   • Before I confide in you, you must promise you won’t say a word to anyone. ➢ in confidence (prep phr), confidential (adj), confidentially (adv) ➢ εκμυστηρεύομαι

2.09 depend (on sb/sth) (v) – 1. need for financial, emotional or other support, have confidence that provides help or support when you need them; synonym of rely on, count on • She knows she can depend on her parents to help her out in a crisis. 2. be controlled or determined by sb/sth • I’m not sure I can take a vacation this year. It depends on whether I get a pay increase or not! ➢ dependence (on) (n), dependent (on) (adj), dependently (adv) ➢ 1. βασίζομαι σε 2. εξισορροπώ από

2.10 rely (on sb/sth) (v) – see 2.09 (1)

2.11 trust (sb) (v) – have faith or confidence in sb • I know I can trust you because you’re honest and reliable, and have never disappointed me. ➢ trust (n), trusted (adj), trusting (adv), trustingly (adv) • Opp: distrust, mistrust • βασίζομαι σε κάποιον, εμπιστεύομαι
Structure/Meaning Summary
confide in sb = tell sb a secret because you trust them depend on sb = rely on sb = count on sb trust sb = believe in sb = have faith in sb trust sb to do sth = trust that sb will do sth = believe that sb will do sth

2.17 approval (n) – 1. (U) acceptance, support • Before we print the new sales catalogue, we’ll need to get the boss’s approval. 2. meet with sb’s approval (idm) – be acceptable to sb • She hopes that her new boyfriend will meet with her parents’ approval. ➢ approve (v), approved (adj), approving (adj), approvingly (adv). ➢ Opp: disapprove

2.18 attitude (n) – (CAJ) the way one thinks and feels about sth • Our attitudes about life usually change as we grow older. / (U) The boss thinks you’re too negative. He’d like to see a change of attitude. ➢ attitudinal (adj) ➢ στάση

2.19 feeling (n) ➔ have a feeling (v phr) – have an idea or suspicion about sth • She had a bad feeling about the job interview. / I have a feeling that he may have stolen the money, but I can’t prove it yet. ➢ feel (v), feeling (adj, feelingly (adv). ➢ αισθάνομαι, διαθέτω, προαίσθηση

2.20 mood (n) – 1. (C) temporary state of mind, how one feels (e.g., happy, sad, angry) • Some people’s moods are affected by the weather: they’re happy when it’s sunny, and sad when it’s raining. 2. be in a good/bad mood (idm) – be in an unpleasant/happy state of mind. • From that big smile on the director’s face, I’d say she was in a good mood today. / From the frown on your face, I’d say you’re in a bad mood. What’s wrong? 3. be in the mood for sth / be in the mood to do sth (idm) – want to do or have sth, feel like doing or having sth • Shall we go out to dinner tonight? I’m in the mood for Chinese food. / I’m in the mood to go dancing tonight. Would you like to come? 4. be in a mood – be angry or ill-tempered, be in a bad mood • Stay away from the boss today. She’s in a mood! ➢ moody (adj), moodyly (adv) ➢ 1. διαθέτω 3. εκ νου διαθέτω 3. εκ νου διαθέτω (για κι να κάνω κτ). 4. είμαι κακόκεφος

2.21 opinion (n) – 1. (C) a belief or judgement about sth • Don’t be so quick to form an opinion about her until you hear all the facts. 2. in sb’s opinion (prep phr) – according to sb, from sb’s point of view • The MP has very negative. He’d like to see a change of attitude. ➢ attitudinal (adj)

2.22 spirit (n) ➔ be in high spirits (idm) – be happy, be in a very good mood • The children were in high spirits as they opened their Christmas presents. ➢ Opp: be in low spirits ➢ υπενθυμίζω

2.23 view (n) ➔ 1. (C) opinion, belief • The MP has very strong views on improving the country’s healthcare system. 2. point of view (n phr) – (C) particular attitude or way of considering sth • We aren’t getting anywhere with this problem. Let’s ask someone with a fresh point of view. / From my point of view, the Prime Minister is doing a brilliant job. ➢ view (v) ➢ (evs. 1-2) γνώμη, άποψη. See 4.44 for alternative meaning.

2.24 pass (v) ➔ time passes (v phr) – time goes by • I can’t believe how quickly time passed when we were on holiday in Spain last year. ➢ χρόνος περνάει

2.25 spare (v) ➔ 1. spare time to do sth (v phr) – make time (or a specific amount of time) available to do sth • Can you spare a few hours tomorrow to help me organise the sales conference? / Sorry,
I'm busy so I can't spare the time to chat with you now. 2. **have time to spare** (v phr) – have extra time to spend with sb • I have to study for an exam this weekend so I don't have time to spare for my friends. ➔ **spare** (adj) 1. διαθέτω χρόνο για να κάνω κτ. 2. έχω διαθέσιμο χρόνο, έχω χρόνο να διαθέσω για κτ.

2.26 **spend** (v) ➔ **spend time doing sth** (v phr) – (usually positive or neutral in meaning) use or pass one's time doing sth • On rainy days the children love to spend time playing board games and doing puzzles. ➔ **περνώ** μου ❖ **ώρα την** pass one's time doing sth

2.27 **waste** (v) ➔ **waste time doing sth** (v phr) – spend time doing sth in a way that is neither useful nor productive • You're wasting a lot of time texting your friends and playing computer games when you could be doing your homework! ➔ a waste of time (n phr) ❖ απαταφίω χρόνο

F (page 21)

All of the adjectives in this section can be used in the phrase **make some people feel ...**, so you'll need to examine each sentence carefully for clues as to which emotion is needed.

2.28 **afraid** (adj) 1. frightened, scared, fearful • Don't be afraid. That noise you hear is only the wind. 2. **be afraid of sth** (v phr) – feel fear when you see or experience sth • Many people are afraid of spiders. **be afraid to do sth/be afraid of doing sth** (v phr) – not want to do sth because you feel fear and think that sth horrible will happen • She's afraid of flying, so she doesn't travel abroad very often. / The children are afraid to stay alone. ➔ 1. φοβισμένος 2. φοβάμαι κτ. 3. φοβάμαι να κάνω κτ.

2.29 **angry** (adj) – displeased, annoyed, feeling like you want to shout at or hurt sb • If you forget her birthday again, it's going to make her very angry. ➔ anger (n, v), angrily (adv) ❖ θυμωμένος

2.30 **anxious** (adj) – 1. extremely worried or nervous • Many students feel anxious on the day of a big exam. 2. **be anxious about sth** – be worried or nervous about sth • He's anxious about the final exam in English as he's not very good at writing compositions. 3. **be anxious to do sth** – want to do sth very much, look forward to sth with a feeling of excitement or interest • She's anxious to start her new job as it's something she's dreamt about all her life. ➔ anxiety (n), anxiously (adv) ➔ 1. ανησυχώς, 2. ανησυχών για κτ. 3. ανησυχούν να κάνω κτ., βέβαια πολύ να κάνω κτ.

2.31 **nervous** (adj) – easily upset or alarmed, anxious and fearful • She's a nervous type; she worries about everything. / He was so nervous about the interview that he couldn't stop his hands and voice from shaking. ➔ nerve (n), nervously (adv) ❖ ανησυχώς, ανησυχίας

G (page 21)

2.32 **worried** (adj) – upset and concerned (e.g., because sth unpleasant has happened or might happen) • I'm worried about you because I know you haven't been feeling well. ➔ worry (n, v), worrying (adj) ❖ ανησυχίας, στενοχωρημένος

2.33 **logical** (adj) – reasonable, rational, sensible; characterised by clear, sound thinking • He owes five of us money, so it's not logical to think he'll repay you if you lend him some, too! / I've thought my plan through step by step, so how can you say it's not logical? ➔ logic (n), logically (adv). ➔ Opp: illogical ➔ λογικός

2.34 **reasonable** (adj) – 1. (of people and their actions or decisions) practical and sensible • Computer prices are much more reasonable than they were 10 years ago. ➔ reason (n, v), reasonableness (n), reasonably (adj). ➔ Opp: unreasonable ➔ (ένς 1-2) λογικός

2.35 **sensible** (adj) – 1. having or showing good sense, reasonable, logical • The boss is willing to accept suggestions, especially when they are sensible and will save the company money. 2. (of clothing) practical • Remember to wear sensible shoes as we'll be walking all day. ➔ sensibleness (n), sensibly (adv). ➔ Opp: foolish, senseless, impractical ➔ 1. λογικός 2. πρακτικός

2.36 **sensitive** (adj) – 1. easily affected (by sth) • He wears dark glasses all day long as his eyes are sensitive to light. 2. (people) easily hurt or offended • She's a sensitive child who cries easily. 3. able to feel deeply, having or showing good taste or deep understanding • He wears dark glasses all day long as his eyes are sensitive to light. 2. (people) easily hurt or offended • She's a sensitive child who cries easily. 3. able to feel deeply, having or showing good taste or deep understanding • She hopes to find a husband who is kind and sensitive. / The poet gave a sensitive reading of his new poem. ➔ sensitivity (n), sense (v), sensitively (adv). ➔ Opp: insensitive ➔ 1. ευαίσθητος, ευαίσθητης 2. ευαίσθητος, ευαίσθητος, ευαίσθητος 3. ευαίσθητος, ευαίσθητος, ευαίσθητος

H (page 21)

Although **hold**, keep, support, and maintain have one or more meanings in common, there are certain set phrases in which only one of the verbs (and not the others) can be used. Here are examples of some of them.

2.37 **hold** (v) ➔ **hold a conversation (with sb)** (v phr) – have a conversation, keep a conversation going • John knows a few phrases in Greek, but not enough to hold a conversation. ➔ συζήτηση, κτ., κάνω συζήτηση
2.38 keep (v) ➔ keep in touch with (idm) – communicate, stay in contact with. My best friend lives in another city now, but we keep in touch by email.

2.39 stand (v) ➔ 1. stand by (sb) (phr v) – remain loyal to sb, typically in a time of need; similar to support (sb) (see 2.40) ➔ Thank you for standing by me when I lost my job. Your friendship means a lot to me. 2. can’t stand sth/sb (v phr) – dislike sth/sb, can’t tolerate sb/sth ➔ I can’t stand it when you are unkind to your sister.

2.40 support (v) – give help, encouragement, or money to sb/sth; take sb’s side in an argument similar to stand by (sb) – see 2.39 (1) ➔ The rich businessman supports a number of local charities. / You’re the only who supported me when the boss thought I stole the money. ➔ support (n), supportive (adj), supportively (adv) ➔ υποστηρίζω

2.41 maintain (v) ➔ maintain a relationship (v phr) – do what is needed to keep a relationship strong and healthy ➔ Nobody said marriage is easy. You need to work hard to maintain a relationship.

2.42 ask after (phr v) – enquire about sb ➔ Your old teacher Mrs Smith always asks after you when I see her in the neighbourhood.

2.43 break up (phr v) – (of people) separate, end a relationship ➔ She’s so angry with her boyfriend that she’s decided to break up with him.

2.44 bring up (phr v) – (of children) raise, help to grow up ➔ if anything ever happens to little Mary’s parents, her godmother has promised to bring up the child.

2.45 care about (phr v) – be concerned about sb/sth ➔ He’s the kind of father who cares about his family deeply. / She cares about job satisfaction more than how much money she makes. ➔ care (n, v), caring (adj), caringly (adv) ➔ ένδιαφέρομαι (για κπ/κτ), με νοιάζει

2.46 come across (as sth/being sth) (phr v) – give an impression of being sth ➔ He comes across as not being a very good student, but in fact he’s brilliant at maths and sciences. ➔ δίνω την εντύπωση

2.47 drop by (phr v) – visit without arrangement; same as drop in (on sb) and drop round ➔ Can you drop by tonight? I want to show you my new HD television. ➔ περνώ να δω, κάνω σύντομη επίσκεψη (συνήθως απροειδοποίητα)

2.48 fall for (phr v) – be attracted to, fall in love with ➔ He fell for her on their first date; now they’re engaged to be married.

2.49 fall in with (phr v) – agree with ➔ Michael usually doesn’t like his wife’s choice of restaurants, but this time he fell in with her suggestion at once because he loves Mexican food.

2.50 fall out (phr v) – not be friends any longer, have an argument or disagreement ➔ I hear Michele and Nigel have fallen out again. I’m starting to think they shouldn’t get married. ➔ falling-out (n)

2.51 hand down (phr v) – pass on to the next generation ➔ To celebrate her 80th birthday, Sarah’s grandmother handed down a piece of her favourite jewellery to each of her grand-daughters.

Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 22)
You are probably familiar with some of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

2.52 have (sth) in common (idm) – have shared interests or characteristics with sb. She was attracted to him because they had many interests and goals in common.

2.53 believe in (sb/sth) (v phr) – have faith or confidence in the truth, existence, or rightness of sb/sth (e.g., a person, idea, or course of action).

2.54 at first sight (prep phr) – 1. when looked at for the first time. 2. love at first sight (idm) – strong physical attraction that occurs the first time you see sb.

2.55 on one’s own (prep phr) – alone; same as by oneself. Many people don’t enjoy living on their own. They would rather share a flat or a house with a friend or a spouse.

2.56 by oneself (prep phr) – see 2.55

2.57 by name (prep phr) – using the name of sb/sth.

2.58 by sight (prep phr) – when sb sees sth.

2.59 in private (prep phr) – with no one else present.

2.60 introduce (sb to sb else) (v) – make sb/oneself known to another person for the first time.
Most of the choices that accompany this passage have already appeared in previous sections. If you need help with one or more choices, review the sections referred to below.

1 C, D  For A, B, see Vocabulary 1: G.

2.61 apparent (adj) – clear, obvious, evident • From what she wrote in her email, it is apparent that her new job is very stressful. ➢ appear (v), apparently (adv) φανερός

2.62 knowledgeable (adj) – well-informed, knowing a lot about one or more subjects • John has a degree in information technology so he's quite knowledgeable about computers and mobile phones. ➢ knowledge (n), knowledgeably (adv). ➢ Opp: unknowableable ➢ φημηφορημένος, ενήμερος

2 A, B, C, D

2.63 neat (adj) ➔ neat and tidy (set phr) – clean and arranged in an orderly way • She's been very busy at work lately, but she always finds time to keep her flat neat and tidy. ➢ καθαρός και τακτοποιημένος

3 For A, B, C, D, see Vocabulary 1: A.

4D Note: All of the choices are similar in meaning, but only one forms a set phrase with the words after the gap.

2.64 peace (n) ➔ peace and quiet (idm) – (set phrase) peacefulness, freedom from disturbance • After a busy week at work, the couple look forward to enjoying the peace and quiet of their weekend at home in the mountains. ➢ γαλήνη, ηρεμία

5 D For A, B, C, see Vocabulary 1: E.

2.65 take (v) ➔ take one’s time (idm) – do sth in a relaxed way, without hurrying • You can take your time with the sales report. The boss doesn’t need it until the end of the month. • κάνω κτ χαρισμό

6 C For A, B, see Vocabulary 1: D.

2.66 mind (n) ➔ to my mind (prep phr) – in my opinion, from my point of view • To my mind, Mrs Adam is the best teacher in the entire school. ➢ κατά τι γνώμη μου

7 For A, B, C, D, see Vocabulary 1: H.

8 For A, B, C, D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

9 C For A, B, D, see Vocabulary 1: B.

2.67 confess (to sth) (v) – admit (to) sth, tell sb that you are guilty of sth or that you have done sth wrong • He confessed to robbing the bank. / He confessed the robbery to the police. / He confessed that he had robbed the bank. ➢ confession (n) • ομολογώ

10 A, C For B, see Vocabulary 1: H.

2.68 divide (v) – 1. separate or be separated into parts • The teacher divided the class into four groups. 2. (maths) find how many times one number goes into another number • If you divide 20 by 5, the answer is 4. ➢ division (n), divided (adj) 1. διαιρώ 2. διαφύ 

2.69 share (v) ➔ share the same interests (v phr) – have the same interests, be interested in or enjoy the same things • She and her husband share the same interests, so they spend almost all of their free time together. ➢ έχω κοινά ενδιαφέροντα, μοιράζομαι

11 For A, B, C, D, see Vocabulary 1: D.

12 B

In this item, notice how the passive construction being … with sb and the absence of the word up after the gap affects the answer.

2.70 raise (v) ➔ be raised (with sb) - same as be brought up with sb, grow up with sb • Meg and her sisters were raised by a very strict father. ➢ μεγαλώνω, ανατρέφομαι

Use of English Practice 1 (page 23)
Vocabulary 2 (pages 26-27)

A

2.71 **answer (v) ➔ answer a letter (v phr)** – write a letter in response to a letter that sb has sent you; same as respond to and reply to a letter • I stopped writing to her because she never answers my letters or emails. ➢ answer (n) ❖ anαπαντάθηκα, απάντηση

2.72 **remark (v)** – say, comment, mention (not necessarily in response to something) • He remarked that the film was one of the best he had ever seen. / “The pie is delicious,” she remarked. ➢ remark (n) ❖ παρατηρώ

2.73 **reply (to sth/sb) (v)** – say or write sth in response to sth/sb • I’ll reply to his email as soon as I have the answer to his questions. ➢ reply (n) ❖ απάντηση σε γράμμα

2.74 **report (sth to sb) (v)** – give a written or spoken account of sth to sb • The boss asked us to report any problems to him personally. ➢ report (n), reported (adj) ❖ αναφέρθηκα

2.75 **respond (v)** – say sth or do sth in response to sth • I asked him a question and he responded by looking at me with a confused look. / “I don’t know what you’re talking about,” he responded. ➢ response (n) ❖ απάντηση, ανταπόκριση

B (page 26)

2.76 **assume (v)** – believe sth is true without having proof, suppose, presume • He has never lied to me before so I assume he is telling the truth. ➢ assumption (n), assumed (adj) ❖ υποθέτω

2.77 **estimate (v)** – roughly state a number, amount or value without knowing exactly • We estimate that about 150 people attended the performance, but I’ll be able to give you the exact number tomorrow. ➢ estimate (n), estimation (n), estimated (adj) ❖ εκτιμώ, εκτιμώντας

2.78 **guess (v)** – 1. try to form an opinion about sth without having enough facts • If you don’t know the answer, guess! / Can you guess who Mark asked to marry him yesterday? 2. think, suppose • I guess I’d better leave soon. You look tired! ➢ guess (n) ❖ 1. μνημείωση, υποθέσεις 2. υποθέσεις, νομίμωση, φαντάζομαι

2.79 **reckon (v)** – (informal) think, have an opinion about sth • Do you reckon he’ll ask her to marry him? ❖ νομίμωση, πιστεύω

2.80 **regard (v) ➔ regard sth/sb as sth (v phr)** – consider sb in a certain way • Most people regard Einstein as a genius. ➢ regard (n), regardless (adj) ❖ θεωρώ

2.81 **suppose (v)** – believe or imagine sth is true • His car is being repaired, so I suppose he’ll take the bus to work. / (often negative, when hoping for an affirmative answer) I don’t suppose that you could lend me some money till the end of the week, could you? ➢ supposition (n), supposed (adj), supposedly (adv) ❖ υποθέτω

C (page 26)

2.82 **level (n)** – 1. (C) a point or position on a scale of quality, quantity, strength, etc • She lives in a quiet rural village, which is why she can’t cope with the noise level of big cities. 2. **take (sth) to the next level (idm)** – (informal) improve • He hired a private tennis coach in the hope of taking his game to the next level. ➢ level (v, adj) • 1. επίπεδο, 2. ανεβάζω το επίπεδο

2.83 **period (n) ➔ period of time (n phr)** – (C) amount of time, length of time, duration • One or two months is not a reasonable period of time in which to learn a language; it normally takes years of hard work. ➢ χρονικό διάστημα

2.84 **term (n) ➔ in the long term (prep phr)** – after a long period of time; same as in the long run • If you study hard and take your schoolwork seriously, it will pay off in the long term. ➢ long-term (adj). Opp: in the short term. ➢ μακροπρόθεσμα, σε μακροπρόθεσμη βάση

2.85 **times (pl n)** – a particular period of time, usually characterised by particular events or conditions • We live in difficult times. / In times of economic crisis, it’s wise for families to spend less spend on travel, gifts and eating out. ➢ εποχή, καιρόι

2.86 **stage (n)** – (C) a part of sb/sth’s development • Many teenagers go through a difficult, rebellious stage in their mid teens. ➢ stage (n), staged (adj) ❖ στάδιο

D (page 26)

2.87 **completely (adv)** – in every way possible, totally, entirely, absolutely • Their home was completely destroyed in the fire. Nothing was left standing. ➢ completion (n), complete (adj) ➢ επιτελείωση, επιτελείωσις, επιτελέσθηκε, επιτελέσθηκα, επιτελέστηκα, επιτελέστηκε

2.88 **mainly (adv)** – more than anything else, chiefly, for the most part • She is mainly concerned about her children; everything else is of lesser importance. / The weather in summer here is mainly hot and humid. ➢ main (adj) ❖ κύρια, πρωτίστως, πρωτίστως, κατα βάσιν

2.89 **particularly (adv)** – especially, specifically • The boss wants us all to clean up our offices, particularly our desks. ➢ particular (n, adj) ❖ ειδικά, συγκεκριμένα
2.90 perfectly (adv) – 1. in a way that couldn’t be better • This suit fits you perfectly. You must buy it! 2. (as an intensifier, for emphasis before an adj/adv) very • It was a perfectly beautiful day: sunny, not too hot, and not a cloud in the sky. / You know perfectly well that I have to study for exams this weekend. Please stop pressuring me to go shopping with you! ➢ perfection (n), perfect (v, adj). ➢ Opp: imperfectly ➢ 1. τελείωσα 2. τελείως

2.91 strongly (adv) – with great strength or force • The wind blew so strongly that we had trouble walking. / He strongly believes in everyone’s right to speak their opinions freely. ➢ strength (n), strong (adj). ➢ Opp: weakly ➢ 1. δυνατά 2. ακράδαν

2.92 widely (adv) – extensively (i.e., over a large area or to a great extent) • The journalist travels widely for his job. / Oregano is widely used in cooking all over the Mediterranean. ➢ width (n), widen (v), wide (adj) ➢ εκτεταμένα, πολύ

E (page 26)

2.93 besides (prep) – in addition to, apart from • Besides being a brilliant student, Jacob is also an excellent athlete. ➢ εκτός από

2.94 despite (prep) – in spite of, regardless of even with • Despite the rainy weather, we decided to drive to the next town to have lunch at our favourite restaurant. ➢ παρά

2.95 unlike (prep) - different from, in contrast to • Unlike her sister, who doesn’t enjoy books, Mary reads four or five novels a month. ➢ unlike (adj). ➢ Opp: like ➢ ανισότητα με

2.96 whereas (conj) – (used in contrasts) but, while • The twins dress alike, so it is difficult to tell them apart. 2. (adv – after two people or groups) • The women were embarrassed when one of them copied from the other? ➢ whereas ➢ κατά τον τρόπο

2.97 greatly (adv) – very much, to a considerable or high degree • His driving skills will improve greatly after he’s had a few driving lessons. / She is proud of her greatly improved English. ➢ greatness (n), great (adj) ➢ πολύ, αυτάθετως

2.98 highly (adv) – (usually used as an intensifier, for emphasis, before an adj/adv) greatly, to a high degree • To be a scientist or a mathematician, you need to be highly intelligent. / She is the most highly paid manager in the company. / Both brothers are highly talented musicians. ➢ height (n), high (adj) ➢ γιγάντια πολύ, εξαιρετικά

2.99 likely (adj) – probable, distinctly possible • The most likely explanation for his lateness is that he’s stuck in traffic. Knowing John, it’s likely that he’ll call at any minute. ➢ likelihood (n). ➢ Opp: unlikely ➢ πιθανός

2.100 probably (adv) – almost certainly, in all likelihood • I’ll probably accept the job, but I want to give it some more thought. / I’ll let you know for sure on Monday. ➢ probability (n), probable (adj) ➢ πιθανός, κατά πάσα πιθανότητα

2.101 surely (adv) – without a doubt, certainly, of course • Surely you’ll accept the job if they offer it to you. You’d be crazy to turn it down. ➢ surely (n), sure (adj) ➢ σιγουρά, ασφαλώς, βέβαια

G (page 27)

Similar but different: Although the following words are similar in meaning, learners need to be careful about how each is used. In the entries below, note the range of structures that appear in the example sentences. In particular, note the following:

X is identical to Y = X is exactly the same as Y
X and Y are identical = X and Y are exactly alike
X is similar to Y = X is almost the same as Y
X is similar to Y and Y are alike (but not exactly the same)
X is equal to Y = X equals Y = X is exactly the same as Y

2.102 alike (adv, pred adj) – 1. (adv) in the same or a similar way • The twins dress alike, so it is difficult to tell them apart. 2. (adv – after two people or groups) • The tour was enjoyed by everyone, children and adults alike 3. (pred adj) – the same or very similar • I get along with my best friend because our interests and opinions are very much alike. ➢ 1. ιδίοι, παρόμοιοι, κατά τον τρόπο 2. ομοίοι 3. ιδίοι, παρόμοιοι. Note: alike cannot be used before a noun.

2.103 equal (to) (adj) – 1. the same in every detail, exactly alike • The women were embarrassed when they arrived at the wedding wearing identical dresses. / Most people have trouble telling identical twins apart. / Tom’s essay is identical to John’s essay. I wonder which one of them copied from the other? ➢ equally ➢ 1. ισομερής, ισός

2.104 identical (to) (adj) – the same in every detail, exactly alike • The women were embarrassed when they arrived at the wedding wearing identical dresses. / Most people have trouble telling identical twins apart. / Tom’s essay is identical to John’s essay. I wonder which one of them copied from the other? ➢ identically (adv) ➢ απαράδεχτα, αναπόσπαστα

2.105 like (adj) - see 2.95

2.106 same (as) (adj) – identical, alike in every way • Sheila and Louise were born on the same day of the same year. / Sheila has the same birthday as Louise. ➢ sameness (n) ➢ ιδίοι

2.107 not (adv) – not at all or by any means, none ➢ 1. κανένας, δεν 2. κανένας

2.108 not exactly (adv) – not at all, none • She is not exactly the same as her mother. ➢ not exactly (adv) ➢ διαφορά

2.109 not so much as (adv) – not even • I don’t think you really are not so much as interested in the project. ➢ not so much as (adv) ➢ καμία προσοχή ούτε κανένας

2.110 not quite (adv) – not entirely, not completely • The weather is not quite as pleasant as yesterday. ➢ not quite (adv) ➢ πλήρως, κανένας

2.111 not really (adv) – not really, quite, indeed • She is not really as old as she looks. ➢ not really (adv) ➢ πραγματικά

2.112 not very much (adv) – not at all, none • He didn’t give me much of a present. ➢ not very much (adv) ➢ καμία προσοχή ούτε κανένας

2.113 different (as) (adv) – different in detail, sort of • He is different as a driver. / The tour was enjoyed by everyone, children and adults alike 3. (pred adj) – the same or very similar • I get along with my best friend because our interests and opinions are very much alike. ➢ 1. ιδίοι, παρόμοιοι, κατά τον τρόπο 2. ομοίοι 3. ιδίοι, παρόμοιοι. Note: alike cannot be used before a noun.
2.107 **similar (to)** (adj) – almost the same as (but not identical to), alike (but not exactly alike) • As sales representatives, Joel and Kate have similar job responsibilities. ❖ παρόμοιος

H (page 27)

2.108 **cope (with)** (v) – deal with, handle; (without with) manage, carry on, get by in difficult conditions

• She finds it difficult to cope with both a full-time job and the needs of her four children. / His job is so stressful that sometimes he finds it difficult to cope. ❖ αντιμετωπίζω, τα βγάζω πέρα

2.109 **deal (v)** ➔ **deal with (sb/sth)** (phr v) – 1. (people) manage, handle, take care of sb/sth • The head teacher promised the teacher that she would deal with the difficult student herself. / The boss asked his assistant to deal with his emails and phone calls whilst he was away on holiday. 2. (of books, articles, films, etc.) be about sth • The documentary deals with great moments of the 20th century. ❖ 1. μεταχειρίζομαι, αντιμετωπίζω, πραγματεύομαι 2. σκοπολούμαι με κτ

2.110 **sort (v)** ➔ **sort out** (phr v) – 1. put in order, arrange things so you can deal with them more effectively • It took several weeks to sort things out after we moved house, but now we are comfortable in our new home. 2. find a solution to sth, deal with sth (e.g., a problem or difficulty) • If they don’t find a way to sort out their problems soon, the marriage will end in divorce. ❖ ξεδιαλύω (n.x., προβλήματα, διακοσμίες), βρίσκω λύση

2.111 **suffer (v)** – 1. (without direct object) experience physical or mental pain • The only good thing about the tragic accident was that the victims did not suffer; they died instantly. 2. **suffer from sth** (verb phr) – be affected by sth (e.g., an illness or loss) • He suffers from a rare blood disease. / Shy people suffer from a lack of confidence. ❖ suffering (n, adj) 1. υποφέρω, πονώ 2. υποφέρω από, πάσχω

2.112 **tolerate (v)** – accept sb/sth that is different from you

• Children should be taught to tolerate and respect people of other races and religions. ❖ tolerance (n), tolerable (adj), tolerably (adv) ❖ ανέχομαι

Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 28)

A

2.113 **get together (phr v)** – meet • We’re getting together at George’s house tonight. Why don’t you come? ➔ get-together (n) ❖ συγκεντρώνομαι

2.114 **let down (phr v)** – disappoint • You’ll let her down if you don’t come to her graduation party. / My best friend has never let me down when I needed help. ➔ letdown (n) ❖ ανοιγμένω

2.115 **look up to (phr v)** – respect, admire • It’s natural for young children to look up to their older brothers and sisters. ❖ θαυμάζω, σέβομαι, εκτιμώ

2.116 **make up for (phr v)** – compensate for (i.e., balance out or reduce the effect of sth negative) • He bought her flowers to try to make up for the rude way he had treated her the day before. / She’s working overtime this week to make up for missing one day of work last week. ❖ επανορθώνω, αποζημιώνω

2.117 **put down (phr v)** – criticise, humiliate (i.e., make sb feel small or worthless) • I hate it when the boss puts me down in front of the other employees. ❖ κριτικάρω/κοροϊδεύω κύκλως

2.118 **put off (phr v)** – discourage, cause to lose enthusiasm • A rude sales assistant put him off shopping at the famous department store; he refuses to shop there anymore. ❖ αποζημιώνω, πονώ

2.119 **put up with (phr v)** – tolerate, accept without really liking sth • If you can’t put up with the boss’s demands, then you’d better start looking for a new job. / Her father is very strict and won’t put up with any disrespect from his children. ❖ ανέχομαι

2.120 **run into (phr v)** – meet by chance • Whilst walking in the park, Mark ran into a childhood friend that he hadn’t seen for years. ❖ συναντώ

2.121 **show off (phr v)** – display to impress • I don’t want to seem like I’m showing off, but I’d love you to come round and see my new flat. I’ve got a great view of the river! ❖ κάνω επίδειξη

2.122 **take after (phr v)** – resemble, be or look like sb • Janet takes after her mother; she looks like her, and she’s also got the same generous heart that her mother has. ❖ μοιάζω (σε εμφάνιση ή συμπεριφορά)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be / pressure</td>
<td>be under pressure (to do sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put pressure</td>
<td>put pressure on sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>age / 19</td>
<td>at the age of 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get married</td>
<td>get married to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get engaged</td>
<td>get engaged to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do sth / secret</td>
<td>do sth in secret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be cruel</td>
<td>be cruel to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be fond</td>
<td>be fond of sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remind</td>
<td>remind sb of sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>describe</td>
<td>describe sb as sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be / home</td>
<td>be at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regard</td>
<td>regard sb as sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depend</td>
<td>depend on sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get / contact</td>
<td>get in contact with sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be enthusiastic</td>
<td>be enthusiastic about sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get angry</td>
<td>get angry with sb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are probably familiar with some of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

2.123 pressure (n) \(\rightarrow\) **1. be under pressure (to do sth)** (v phr) – be made to feel that you must do sth
- *The sales manager is under pressure to increase the company's sales by 25% next year.*
- *put pressure (on sb) (to do sth)* – push sb to do what one wants (e.g., by using persuasion, force or threats)
- *The director is putting pressure on me to increase sales; if I don't, he said he would fire me.*

2.124 cruel (adj) \(\rightarrow\) **be cruel (to sb/sth)** (v phr) – be unkind to sb/sth, cause sb/sth to feel pain or be miserable
- *She dislikes people who are cruel to animals.*

2.125 fond (adj) \(\rightarrow\) **be fond (of sb/sth)** (verb phr) – like, feel affection for; similar to be keen on (sb/sth)

2.126 **remind (v) \(\rightarrow\) remind sb of sb/sth** (v phr) – cause sb to remember or to think of sb/sth
- *My grandmother told me that I reminded her of my mother when she was young.*
- *That song always reminds me of my childhood.*

2.127 **describe (v) \(\rightarrow\) describe sb/sth as** (v phr) – say what sb/sth is like, give an account in words
- *She described her husband as the kindest person she has ever known.*
- *He described the island as a tropical paradise.*

2.128 **get in contact with sb** (v phr) – communicate with sb (e.g., telephone, email or visit someone, usually to provide or get information); similar to **get in touch with sb**
- *Don is living in France now, so I'm planning to get in contact with him before I go to Paris next month.*
**Use of English (page 31)**

**Idioms**

**A**

2.129 twist sb round one's little finger (idm) – make sb do what you want • Her husband does whatever she asks him to do. She knows exactly how to twist him round her little finger. ❖ κάνω κτ σε θέλω, κάνω κάποιον υποχαίρια μου, σέρνω κάποιον από τη μύτη

2.130 have the upper hand (idm) – control things (e.g., a relationship, a situation) • My manager was clearly being unfair, but I couldn’t say no because he had the upper hand. ❖ βρίσκομαι σε πλεονεκτική θέση, έχω το πάνω χέρι

2.131 come out of one's shell (idm) – lose one’s shyness • She was a shy child and teenager, but she began to come out of her shell as soon as she went off to university. ❖ βγαίνω από το καβούκι μου

2.132 give sb a piece of one’s mind (idm) – tell sb angrily exactly what one thinks • I’m going to give her a piece of my mind. ❖ μιλώ σε κτ τη μύτη μου

2.133 wear one's heart on one's sleeve (idm) – show one’s emotions openly • I can always tell when Julie is upset about something as she wears her heart on her sleeve. ❖ εκδηλώνω τα αισθήματά μου εύκολα, δεν κρατώ τίποτα μέσα μου

2.134 let one’s hair down (idm) – relax and enjoy oneself • We're going dancing on Saturday night. Why don’t you come with us and let your hair down for a change? ❖ αφήνω τον εαυτό μου ελεύθερο

**Which meaning? (page 32)**

2.135 on time (prep phr) – punctually, at the time that was expected or arranged • His flight landed right on time, so he should be coming through the gate in a few minutes. ❖ ακριβώς (στην ώρα που πρέπει)

2.136 in time (prep phr) – earlier than necessary, with time to spare • The lecturer arrived in time to look at his notes before he began to speak. ❖ εγκαιρά

2.137 shout (v) ➔ shout at sb (v phr) – 1. speak to sb in a loud, angry voice • We’re not going to solve this problem if you continue to shout at me. Please calm down and lower your voice. 2. shout to sb (v phr) – communicate in a loud voice (e.g., to attract sb’s attention) • When I saw him from across the street, I shouted to him to attract his attention. ❖ shout (n), shouting (adj)

2.138 be in the way (idm) – cause an obstruction, be directly in front of sb, making it impossible for them to move forward; same as be in sb’s/sth’s way

2.139 be on the way (idm) – be in the process of coming or going somewhere • When he was halfway home, he called his wife on his mobile to let her know he was on the way. / Did you hear the weather report? There’s a storm on the way. ❖ είμαι καθ’οδόν
3.06 cut (n) – a long narrow opening in the skin, made by a knife or other sharp object. • I gave myself a deep cut while slicing onions with a sharp knife. ➢ cut (v, adj), cutting (adj) ➢ κόψιμο
3.07 fracture (n) – (C) a crack or break in a bone or other hard object or material • People with osteoporosis run the risk of bone fractures. / The doctor treated the fracture by putting the patient’s arm in a plaster cast. ➢ fracture (v), fractured (adj) ➢ κάταγμα, θλάση, σπάσιμο

3.08 harm (n) ➔ do oneself harm (v phr) – cause damage to oneself (or one’s health) • People who smoke do themselves harm with every cigarette they smoke. ➢ κάνω κακό στον εαυτό μου

3.09 infection (n) – (C) condition caused by harmful bacteria • Children often get ear infections. / You’ll get an infection if you don’t put antiseptic cream on that cut on your finger. ➢ infect (v), infectious (adj), infected (adj) ➢ μολυσματική ασθένεια, μολυσμένος

3.10 injury (n) – (C/U) physical damage; an instance of physical damage (e.g., a cut or broken bone) • The team has been hurt by illness and injury this year. / Last week our team’s goalkeeper suffered a serious knee injury, so he won’t be playing for the rest of the season. ➢ τραυματισμός

3.11 wound (n) – (C) an injury to part of the body (see 3.10), esp. one in which the skin is cut or broken • The police officer suffered two gunshot wounds during the bank robbery. / The wound from the patient’s heart surgery is healing nicely. ➢ wound (v), wounded (adj), wounding (adj) ➢ τραύμα, πλήρη ανάρρωση

3.12 examination (n) – (C/U) (medical) a close look at sb/sth, esp. to see if anything is wrong; the action of looking at sth closely • The routine medical examination showed that the patient had high blood pressure. / On closer examination, the doctor decided that the patient’s symptoms were no cause for alarm. ➢ exam (n), examine (v) ➢ εξέταση

3.13 injection (n) – (C/U) the action or an act of using a syringe or needle to give sb a drug or medicine under their skin • The dentist gave the patient an injection of novocaine so she wouldn’t feel any pain. / The antibiotic may be given to patients either by injection or in pill form. ➢ inject (v) ➢ εμφύλιση

3.14 operation (n) – (C) an act of cutting open part of a person or animal’s body to remove or repair sth that is damaged; an act of surgery (see 1.14) • The patient will need an operation to repair his badly broken leg. ➢ operate (v), (in)operate (adj) ➢ ευχείριση
3.15 prescription (n) – (C/U) doctor’s written instruction that allows sb to buy medicine • (C) You don’t need a prescription for aspirin; you can buy it at any chemist’s. / (U) That heart medication is available only by prescription; you’ll have to talk to your doctor. ➞ prescribe (v), prescribed (adj) • συνταγή φαρμάκου

3.16 recipe (n) – (C) written instructions for preparing a particular food/dish • My friends and I love to bake, so we enjoy sharing recipes for our favourite pies and cakes. • συνταγή (μαγειρικής)

3.17 test (n) – (C) a medical procedure used for diagnostic purposes (e.g., as part of a complete medical examination) • As part of my yearly check-up, my doctor orders a blood test to check things like my levels of cholesterol and iron. ➞ test (v) • εξέταση (n.x., αιτήματος). See 5.11 for alternative meaning.

3.18 vaccine (n) – (C) a substance injected into the body or taken orally to protect against disease • Scientists are hoping to discover vaccines to prevent AIDS and cancer. ➞ vaccination (n), vaccinate (v), vaccinated (adj) • εμβόλιο

3.19 common (adj) – 1. ordinary, without special characteristics; also, widespread and therefore typical (not special) • Mobile phones are much more common now than they were twenty years ago. How did we ever live without them? 2. common cold – (C) another term for cold (e.g., a common illness affecting the nose and throat) • There’s no cure for the common cold, but you’ll feel better after a nice hot bowl of chicken soup and a day or two in bed. ➞ commonness (n), commonly (adv) • 1. συνηθισμένος, κοινός. See also 5.95 (meaning 2).

3.20 dry (adj) ➔ dry cough (n phr) – a cough that sounds bad and does not produce any liquid (e.g., phlegm or mucus) when sb tries to clear their throat • I don’t like the sound of that dry cough you have. Maybe it’s time you saw a doctor. • ξηρός βήχας

3.21 runny (adj) ➔ runny nose (n phr) – a condition in which a clear liquid (known as mucus) drips from a person’s nose • That runny nose of yours may be a symptom of a cold, flu or allergies. • μύτη που τρέχει, συνάχι

3.22 sharp (adj) – (of pain or other physical sensation) great, intense, severe • When he fell to the ground, he heard a crack and then felt a sharp pain in his left leg. ➞ sharpness (n), sharply (adv). ➞ Opp: dull • οξύς, έντονος, διαπαρατικός

3.23 sore (adj) – (of parts of the body) painful, aching • He always has a sore throat at the end of an exciting football match. / She dropped a frying pan on her toe last week, and it’s still very sore (not to mention black and blue). ➞ soreness (n), sorely (adv) • πονεμένος, ερεθισμένος

3.24 throbbing (adj) ➔ 1. throb (v) – (of parts of the body) experience a feeling of pain that comes in strong, rhythmic waves • His poor, tired feet throbbed for hours after the long hike in the forest. 2. throbbing headache – (n phr) – a headache characterised by waves of pounding rhythmic pain that feels like one’s head is going to split open; same as splitting headache • She had one of those horrible throbbing headaches that felt like someone was hitting her head with a hammer every second or two. ➞ throb (n, v) • 1. στραμπουλιγμένος

3.25 bruised (adj) – (of the skin) discoloured (e.g., purple, blue, black or yellow), as a result of falling or being hit • Her arms and legs were so badly bruised in the accident, that it took weeks for her skin to get back its normal colour. ➞ bruise (n, v), bruising (adj) • μελανισμένος, γεμάτος μόλις

3.26 sprained (adj) – (usually of joints such as ankles and wrists) injured as a result of excessive bending, pulling or tearing (usually referring to joints such as ankles or wrists) • The runner suffered a sprained ankle when he fell crossing the finish line. ➞ sprain (n, v) • στραμπούλισμενός

3.27 torn (adj) – (of a muscle or ligament) damaged; similar to pulled • The tennis player was unable to compete in the tournament as he had a torn muscle in his right arm. ➞ tear (n, v) • σκαμένος

3.28 twisted (adj) – similar to sprained (see 3.26 and note below)

Similar but different: sprain vs. twist – When used as a verb, twist is sometimes used interchangeably with sprain: e.g., you can twist or sprain your ankle, wrist or knee. The adjectives used in the resulting injuries, however, tend to be used less flexibly: e.g., a sprained ankle, a sprained wrist, a sprained knee, a twisted knee. Note: Don’t confuse these common injuries with twist sb’s arm (idm) – persuade or pressure sb to do sth they don’t want to do • I want to go to the party, so you don’t have to twist my arm. • εξαναγκάζω, εξαναγκάζω

3.29 blow (v) ➔ blow one’s nose (v phr) – clear one’s nose by blowing air through it • During allergy season, he always carries a handkerchief or tissues with him in case he needs to blow his nose. • φυσώ τη μύτη μου

3.30 sigh (v) – let out a deep breath of air (e.g., because of sorrow, pleasure or relief) • The widow sighs sadly whenever she thinks about her dead husband. ➞ sigh (n), sighing (adj) • αναστατώζω
3.31 sneeze (v) – have air come out of one’s nose suddenly and noisily • If you put your nose near an open tin of pepper and take a deep sniff, it will probably make you sneeze. Achoo! ➞ sneeze (n), sneezing (n, adj) ❖ φταρνίζομαι

3.32 yawn (v) – open one’s mouth wide and breathe in and out deeply (e.g., because one is tired or bored) • The child yawned once or twice, put his head on the pillow, and was asleep in an instant. ➞ yawn (n), yawning (adj) ❖ καθμουρέμαι

3.34 regime (n) ➔ fitness regime (n phr) – (C) a plan or program that one follows to improve one’s physical condition • Meg’s weekly fitness regime includes a daily bicycle ride and one hour of aerobic exercise and strength training four times a week at her local gym. ❖ αγωγή, αναδρομή, καθημερινή ρουτίνα

3.35 routine (n) ➔ daily routine (n phr) – (C) set sequence of actions that one performs every day • The daily routine of a young mother is based on the needs of her newborn child, and includes little time for going out and socialising with friends. ❖ καθημερινή ρουτίνα

3.36 session (n) ➔ training session (n phr) – (C) (sports) set period of time used for exercise and practice to get a team or individual player into the best possible condition • Our basketball coach expects us to take part in a daily training session that last two or three hours seven days a week. ❖ χρονική περίοδος εξάσκησης, προπόνηση

3.37 state (n) ➔ state of mind (n phr) – (C) one’s mood or mental condition at a particular moment; similar to frame of mind • Mr Hutchins used to be cheerful and optimistic, but he’s been in a different state of mind since his wife died. ❖ πνευματικό ή ψυχικό κατάσταση

3.38 cream (n) ➔ face cream (n phr) – (C) very thick, usually white liquid that one uses to improve the feel and appearance of their face • My grandmother refuses to spend money on expensive face creams, yet she still has lovely, smooth skin. ❖ κρέμα προσώπου

3.39 drop (n) ➔ drops (pl n) – liquid medicine that is used in very amounts (known as drops) • Anyone who has allergies probably has a good supply of eye drops and nose drops in their medicine cabinet. ❖ σάγανες (p.x.i., για τα μάτια, μύτη κλπ)

3.40 lotion (n) – (C) thick, smooth, usually white liquid rubbed onto the skin for medicinal or cosmetic purposes (not as thick as a cream – see 3.38) • Her favourite body lotion smells of lavender and leaves her skin feeling smooth and silky. ❖ φροντίζω

3.41 ointment (n) – thick, smooth, oily, usually clear-coloured product that is rubbed onto the skin for medicinal purposes • Our family first-aid kit contains a tube of antiseptic ointment that we use on cuts to prevent them from getting infected. ❖ από

3.42 pill (n) – (C) round, flat disk of medicine that one swallows without chewing • In addition to a multi-vitamin pill, she also takes a pill three times a day to lower her high blood pressure. ❖ κάπνω

3.43 syrup (n) ➔ cough syrup (n phr) – (C) thick, often sweet liquid that contains medicine for coughs • Make sure you buy a children’s cough syrup for little Johnny; regular cough syrups are too strong for young children. ❖ αφοί για τον βήχα

**Phrasal Verbs 1**

**A**

3.44 bring round (phr v) – help back to consciousness (i.e., an awake state) • She fainted from the shock of the bad news, but luckily a few pats on the face was all she needed to bring her round. ❖ συνερέγγω κι (από) ξυπνώνω • Note: Don’t confuse bring round with come round (phr v) - see 3.112.

3.45 care for (phr v) – look after, take care of (e.g., a child or elderly person, sb who is ill) • When her husband died, the old woman had no one to care for her. ❖ φροντίζω

3.46 get over (phr v) – recover from (e.g., an illness) • It took him almost two months to get over a nasty bout of flu and start feeling like himself again. ❖ απέρριψα, απέρριπτό μου

3.47 give up (phr v) – stop doing sth • It took a heart attack and some strict words from his doctor to make him finally give up smoking. ❖ σταματάω κτ., κάβω μια συνήθεια

3.48 go down with (phr v) – become ill (usually with sth not very serious); same as come down with • John called to say he’s gone down with a bad cold, so he won’t be coming to work today. ❖ συνέλαβα, προσβλήθηκα από
You are probably familiar with many of the phrases in the chart. Following are some of the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

3.49 **go through** (phr v) – endure, suffer, experience and live through (sth unpleasant) • It’s natural for someone to **go through a period of deep sadness when a loved one dies.**  

3.50 **keep off** (phr v) – (of food, etc.) not eat or drink (sth), stay away from (sth) • She’s allergic to shellfish, so her doctor has warned her to keep off foods like prawn, lobster and crab.  

3.51 **pass out** (phr v) – lose consciousness, faint • She passed out and fell to the ground when she heard her son had been in a car accident.  

3.52 **wear off** (phr v) – (of the effects of sth) disappear slowly • The dentist advised Tom not to eat or drink anything for a few hours until the pain-killer she injected him with wore off.  

3.53 **work out** (phr v) – do exercise • The couple work out at the gym four times a week, so they’re both in excellent condition.  

### Prepositions 1 (page 38)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>benefit</td>
<td>benefit from sth/doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danger</td>
<td>out of danger (Opp: in danger)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay / hospital</td>
<td>stay in hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay / bed</td>
<td>stay in bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>least</td>
<td>at least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>be in pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suffer</td>
<td>suffer from sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good health</td>
<td>in good health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concentrate</td>
<td>concentrate on sth/doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>be the key to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be / habit</td>
<td>be in the habit of doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be / breath</td>
<td>be out of breath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put yourself / risk</td>
<td>put yourself at risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reach</td>
<td>out of the reach of sb; out of reach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keen</td>
<td>be keen on sth/doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep away / sth</td>
<td>keep sb away from sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be surprised</td>
<td>be surprised at sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are probably familiar with many of the phrases in the chart. Following are some of the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

3.54 **benefit (from sth)** (v) – gain an advantage from sth • Many young people benefit from travelling and studying abroad.  

3.55 **at least** (prep phr) – not less than • There must have been at least 3,000 people in the stadium for the championship match last night.  

3.56 **suffer from** (v) – see 2.111  

3.57 **concentrate (on sth/doing sth)** (v) – focus one’s thoughts or attention on sth • It’s hard to concentrate on your work when there is so much noise from the traffic outside.  

3.49 benefit (from sth) (v), beneficial (adj), beneficially (adv)  

3.52 wear off (phr v)  

3.53 work out (phr v)
3.58  **key** (n) ➔ **be the key to sth** (idm) – (fig) the main thing (i.e., an ingredient or factor) that makes it possible to do, achieve or understand sth • *The key to success is hard work.* / *Diet and exercise are the keys to healthy living.* ➔ *είμαι καθοριστικής σημασίας ("κλειδί"), καιρίας*

3.59  **habit** (n) ➔ **be in the habit of doing sth** (v phr) – be used to doing sth often or on a regular basis • *She's in the habit of going for a walk every day.* ➔ *έχω τη συνήθεια να κάνω κτ*

3.60  **breath** (n) ➔ **be out of breath** (idm) – breathe very quickly because you have been doing something energetic, feel like it is difficult to breathe • *You'd be out of breath, too, if you had just walked up ten flights of stairs!* ➔ *Opp: catch one's breath* ➔ *είμαι λαχανιασμένος*

### Use of English Practice 1 (page 39)

**Items 1-12: Choices**

Most of the choices that accompany this passage have already appeared in previous sections. If you need help with them, review the sections referred to below.

1. For A, B, C, see Vocabulary 1: A.
2. For A, B, C, D, see Vocabulary 1: C.
3. For A, C, see Vocabulary 1: C.
4. For A, see Vocabulary 1: B. For B, see Vocabulary 1: E. For C and D, see Vocabulary 1: D.
5. For B, C, D, see Vocabulary 1: D (entries contain several related collocations).
6. For B, C, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
7. For A, B, C, D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
8. For B, see Vocabulary 1: C.
9. For A, B, C, see Vocabulary 1: B.
10. For C, see Vocabulary 1: D.
11. For D, see Vocabulary 1: G (check entries for a related collocation).
12. For A, B, C, D, see Vocabulary 1: F.

### Vocabulary 2 (pages 42-43)

**A** (page 42)

3.63  **bite** (v) – 1. **bite into sth** (v phr) use one's teeth to cut into sth (e.g., in order to eat) • *The children couldn’t wait to bite into the pizza.* 2. **bite (sth/sb)** (v) – use one's teeth to wound or injure (sb/sth) • *Does the dog bite? / Ouch! I've bitten my tongue!* ➔ *be (n), bitten (adj).* 3. **Note:** The phrase *bite one’s tongue* can also be used as an idiom, to mean ‘stop oneself from saying sth (e.g., because it might be insulting or cause an argument)’ ➔ *I wanted to tell the boss that I thought his idea wouldn’t work, but I bit my tongue and did what he asked.* ➔ *δαγκώνω, δαγκώνω τη γλώσσα μου*

3.64  **chew** (v) – move one's jaws up and down (e.g., to crush food between the teeth) ➔ *This meat is so tough I can hardly chew it.* / *Our teacher doesn’t allow us to chew gum in class.* ➔ *μασώ*

3.65  **choke** (v) – 1. **choke (on sth)** (v) – have trouble breathing because sth is blocking one’s airway • *Don’t eat so fast, or you’ll choke on your food.* 2. **choke (sb/sth)** (v) – cause sb to stop breathing by closing off sb’s airway; strangle ➔ *if you pick up the cat by its neck, you’ll choke the poor thing!* ➔ *Be careful!* ➔ *choking (adj)* ➔ *νίνγουμαι 2. νίνγου*

3.66  **gulp** (v) ➔ **gulp (sth) down** (v phr) – eat or drink (sth) quickly, usually with a loud swallowing noise (see also 3.69) ➔ *He was so thirsty that he gulped down three glasses of water without stopping.* ➔ *gulp (n), gulping (adj)* ➔ *καταφιλοθάλασσα, καταφιλοθάλασσα (φαλάρια)*

3.67  **sip** (v) – drink, taking a little bit at a time ➔ *A fine brandy is meant to be sipped slowly and rolled around the tongue.* / *She sipped the hot soup, taking care not to burn her tongue.* ➔ *sip (n)* ➔ *αργοπίνω, ρουφώ γουρίδια-γουρίδια*
3.68 **suck (v)** – (of a piece of candy or throat lozenge) keep sth in one’s mouth, working it with one’s tongue and lips so that it slowly melts or dissolves • If you suck a throat lozenge slowly, it will last for a long time and make your sore throat feel better. ➢ sucking (adj) ➢ πιπιλίζω

3.69 **swallow (v)** – cause food to go down the throat • When eating fish, always chew carefully so you don’t swallow any bones. / Her throat was so sore that she was having trouble swallowing her food. ➢ swallow (n) ➢ καταπίνω

**B (page 42)**

3.70 **course (n)** – (C) one of several parts or stages of a meal • When visitors come to our house for a special occasion, we usually have a three-course meal: the first course (or starter), then some kind of meat and vegetables for the main course and, finally, a sweet for dessert. ➢ course (n) ➢ μέρος ➢ επίδορπιο

3.71 **dessert (n)** – (C/U) a sweet dish (e.g., fruit, ice cream or cake) that is served at the end of the meal; the final course of a meal ➢ dessert (n) ➢ κέικ

3.72 **dish (n)** – (C) food prepared in a particular way and served as one part of a meal • Spaghetti carbonara, fried calamari and eggplant rollatini are among the Italian restaurant’s most popular dishes. ➢ dish out (phr v) ➢ πιάτο

3.73 **ingredient (n)** – (C) one part of a mixture or combination • We can’t make a cake today because we’re out of sugar, flour, and a few other ingredients that the recipe calls for. / I like simple recipes that only have a few ingredients. ➢ ingredient (n) ➢ συστατικό

3.74 **meal (n)** – (C) an occasion when one or more people sit down to eat; all of the food eaten at such a time • Most people have three meals a day: breakfast, lunch and dinner. / We thanked our hostess for the delicious meal. ➢ meal (n) ➢ γεύση

3.75 **portion (n)** – (C) (of food) serving, helping (i.e., an amount of food that is served) • The roasted lamb was so delicious that everyone asked for a second portion. / We went to the new French restaurant last night: the portions were small and the prices were high, so we won’t be going back again. ➢ portion (n) ➢ μέρισμα

3.76 **starters (pl n)** – (C/U) (same as **appetisers or hors d’oeuvres**) the first course of a meal; also the small, savoury dishes served during this course • For starters, we ordered prawns, stuffed mushrooms and Swedish meatballs. / When my friends and I go to a Greek restaurant, we usually order lots of starters instead of a three-course meal. ➢ starters (pl n) ➢ ορεκτικά

**C (page 42)**

3.77 **altogether (adv)** – completely, totally • After he broke his leg, he stopped going to the gym altogether. / We’re not altogether sure about coming to the party on Friday night. I may have to work late. ➢ altogether (adv) ➢ απολύτως

3.78 **anyway (adv)** – 1. in spite of (sth), regardless • I didn’t like the novel from the start, but I read it anyway as I had nothing else to read. 2. at any rate, be that as it may (often used in conversation to change the subject) • Anyway, that’s all my news. What have you been doing lately? ➢ anyway (adv) ➢ απολύτως

3.79 **instead (adv)** – as an alternative, in place of sth • I didn’t want to go dancing with my friends, so I went to a film instead. ➢ instead (adv) ➢ απολύτως

**D (page 42)**

3.82 **fresh (adj)** – (food) recently made, grown, purchased or obtained • When possible, I prefer eating fresh vegetables, as opposed to frozen or tinned ones. ➢ fresh (adj) ➢ φρέσκος

3.83 **nutritious (adj)** – (food) containing substances (e.g., proteins, vitamins) that keep the body healthy • We had a nutritious spinach and mushroom salad topped with grilled chicken and a light dressing of olive oil. ➢ nutritious (adj) ➢ υγιεινός

3.84 **raw (adj)** – (food) not cooked • Raw meat can contain dangerous organisms, so make sure you cook those steaks well. / She never eats raw onions as it makes her breath smell bad. ➢ raw (adj) ➢ παραψυκτικός

3.85 **soft (adj)** ➢ soft drink (n phr) – a drink that does not contain alcohol • Coca Cola is one of the most popular soft drinks in the world. ➢ soft (adj) ➢ γλυκό

3.86 **stale (adj)** – (of foods that are baked) no longer fresh; hard and dry • If you leave the bread out overnight, it will be stale by the morning. ➢ stale (adj) ➢ αναψυκτικός

3.87 **tender (adj)** – (meat) soft and easy to cut or chew, not tough • Filet mignon is the most tender...
Opp: tough, hard ❖ μαλακός, τρυφερός tenderness (n), tenderise (v), tenderly (adv).
➣ easy to cut, not to mention juicy and delicious!

 cut of beef I have ever eaten. It's always soft and easy to cut, not to mention juicy and delicious!

➢ toughness (n), toughen (v)

See 5.76 for alternative meaning.

E (page 43)

3.89 appliance (n) – (C) electrical device or machine that is used in the home for a specific purpose (e.g., cooking or cleaning) • The shop sells refrigerators, dishwashers, stoves and other household appliances.
❖ συσκευή

3.90 cutlery (n) – (collective noun) knives, forks and spoons; eating utensils • When she has company for dinner, she always lays the table with her china dishes and best cutlery. ❖ μαχαιροπήρουνα

3.91 equipment (n) – (collective noun) things (e.g., machines, tools) needed to do a particular activity
• A photographer’s basic equipment includes cameras, lenses, tripods and lights. / Treadmills, stationary bikes and elliptical machines are standard pieces of fitness equipment in most gyms today. ➢ equip (v), equipped (adj) ❖ εξοπλισμός

3.92 gadget (n) – (C) a clever or strange device • Her kitchen is equipped with an egg-slicer, a corkscrew, and dozens of other time-saving gadgets that her children have no idea what to do with! ➢ gadgetry (n) ❖ μηχανική εξοπλισμός, μηχανική εργαλεία

3.93 instrument (n) – (C) tool or device used for a particular task, esp. scientific or other work that requires accuracy • The lab technician’s microscope was his most important instrument. / The doctor has a full range of medical instruments in his surgery. ➢ instrumental (adj) ❖ επιστημονικός, εργαλειοφόρος, εργαλειοφόρος

3.94 tool (n) – hand-held device that is used to do a particular job • Spades, hoes and rakes are common gardening tools. / I can use a few basic tools such as a hammer and screwdriver. ❖ εργαλεία

F (page 43)

3.95 bitter (adj) – (food) having a strong, unpleasant taste; not sweet • Most people say that coffee without sugar tastes bitter to them. / Unsweetened chocolate has a bitter taste, as does beer. ➢ bitterness (n), bitterly (adv). ➢ Opp: sweet ❖ πικρός

3.96 oily (adj) – (food) containing a lot of oil • I don’t like oily fish like salmon or eel. / Some people say that Greek cooking is too oily for them. ➢ oiliness (n) ❖ παθωτός, πλαστήρος

3.97 salty (adj) – (food) tasting of or containing a lot of salt • People with high blood pressure and heart problems should keep off salty foods, like crisps or salted peanuts. ➢ salt (n), saltiness (n) ❖ αλμυρός

3.98 sour (adj) – (food) having an acid taste (e.g., like lemon or vinegar); also, spoiled (like old milk)
• This lemonade tastes sour, so I recommend adding some sugar. / The milk tastes sour because you left it out last night. ➢ sourness (n), sour (v), sourly (adv).
➢ Opp: sweet ❖ τσιτάς

3.99 spicy (adj) – (food) with a strong or hot taste (because of seasonings like curry powder or pepper)
• Many people find Indian and Mexican food overly spicy. / She always adds hot pepper to her tomato sauce, because she likes it spicy. ➢ spice (n, v).
➢ Opp: mild ❖ καρυκευμένος, πικάντικος, καυτερός

3.100 sweet (adj) – (food) tasting of sugar or honey
• She wants to lose weight, so she’s staying away from cake, ice cream, and other sweet foods.
➢ sweetness (n), sweeten (v), sweetly (adv).
➢ Opp: salty, savoury, sour ❖ γλυκός

G (page 43)

3.101 boil (v) – (liquid) heat until sth bubbles and turns to steam; (food) cook in very hot, bubbling water
• To make potato salad, first boil the potatoes for 20 minutes and then allow them to cool. ➢ boil (v), boiled (adj) ❖ βράζω

3.102 fry (v) – cook in hot oil or fat (usually in a shallow pan called a frying pan)
• I can always tell when Mum has fried fish for dinner. The house smells really bad for hours! ➢ fried (adj), frying (adj) ❖ ηρέπη

3.103 grill (v) – (food, esp. meat and vegetables) cook quickly at a very high temperature on a grill (i.e., a metal frame on which food is placed); similar to broil (in an oven) or barbecue (outside on a grill)
• I prefer to grill meat in the oven, because I don’t like the taste of charcoal. / In the USA, many people celebrate the Fourth of July by grilling hot dogs and hamburgers in their backyards. ❖ ψάρνω (από αέρα)

3.104 roast (v) – cook for a long time at a high temperature (e.g., in an oven or over an open fire)
• Mum is roasting a leg of lamb for Sunday lunch. / We roasted a lamb over an open charcoal fire in our garden last Easter. ➢ roast (n), roasted (adj), roasting (adj) ❖ ψήνω (από οικονόμω σε φωτιά) εκεί, στην αύλη σουβλίζω (απευθείας)

3.105 steam (v) – (food) cook by exposing to steam
• It’s healthier to steam vegetables than to boil them as steaming preserves the vitamins and minerals better. ➢ steam (n), steamed (adj), steaming (adj) ❖ μαγειρεύω στον στέγα

Unit 3
3.105 alternative (n) – (C) one of two or more available possibilities; similar to option and choice • He had only two alternatives: stay in a job he didn’t like or quit. / When she discovered a bag with money under her son’s bed, she felt she had no alternative but to call the police. ➔ alternate (v), alternative (adj), alternatively (adv)  εναλλακτική λύση, επιλογή

3.106 alternative (n) – (C) one of two or more available possibilities; similar to option and choice • He had only two alternatives: stay in a job he didn’t like or quit. / When she discovered a bag with money under her son’s bed, she felt she had no alternative but to call the police. ➔ alternate (v), alternative (adj), alternatively (adv)  εναλλακτική λύση, επιλογή

3.107 choice (n) ➔ (not) through choice (prep phr) – (not) because one prefers or has chosen sth; same as (not) by choice • After leaving school, she continued to live with her parents in their tiny flat, not through choice but because she couldn’t afford to rent a place of her own. ➔ choose (v), chosen (adj)  κατά προτίμηση, αφού το διαλέξα

3.108 option (n) – (C) choice, alternative • You have two options: you can either stay or leave! ➔ opt (v), optional (adj), optionally (adv)  επιλογή, εναλλακτική λύση

3.109 preference (for) (n) – (C) sth that one likes or prefers over other things • He listens to many kinds of music, but opera is his preference. / She reads science fiction from time to time, but she’s always had a preference for historical novels. ➔ prefer (v), preferably (adv)  προτίμηση

3.110 range (of) (n) – (C) all the different kinds of sth, variety • The department store sells a wide range of goods, including clothing, electrical appliances, furniture and sports equipment. ➔ range (v)  ποικιλία

3.111 selection (of) (n) – 1. (C) a range or variety of things from which a choice can be made • The restaurant has a wide selection of starters and main courses. 2. sth which is chosen from such a variety • We made several selections from the starter menu. ➔ select (v), selected (adj)  ποικιλία, συλλογή

Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 44)

A

3.112 come round (phr v) – regain consciousness • She fainted and fell to the floor, but someone threw a glass of water on her face and she came round immediately.  συνέρχομαι. 
Note: Don’t confuse come round with bring round (phr v) - see 3.44.

3.113 cut down (on sth) (phr v) – reduce or limit (sth or an amount of sth) • He stays slim because he goes to the gym every day; if he cuts down on his exercise, he’ll start to gain weight. / You wouldn’t have so much trouble paying your rent every month if you cut down on all the makeup and clothing you buy.  περιορίζω (κτ)

3.114 get (sb) down (phr v) – make (sb) unhappy • Rainy weather always gets me down; I feel much happier when the sun comes out.  καταθλίβω

3.115 go off (phr v) – (food) go bad • If you don’t put the milk back in the refrigerator, it will go off.  χάνω, ξηρίζω. See 5.55 for alternative meaning.

3.116 miss out (on sth) (phr v) – fail to take part (in sth) (e.g., that would be enjoyable or beneficial) • There’s a great sale on at the shopping centre this weekend. Don’t miss out! / If you don’t come to the party tomorrow, you’ll miss out on all the fun.  λύση, επιλογή από κάτι

3.117 pay off (phr v) ➔ sth pays off (phr v) – (of actions) have good results • His new fitness regimen is really paying off. He’s lost 10 kilos in two months and he looks great! ➔ pay-off (n)  (μετ) αποδίδω

3.118 send for (sb/sth) (phr v) – ask (sb/sth) to come • Grandmother’s feeling poorly. It may be her heart. Hurry! Send for an ambulance.  παραγγέλνω, καλώ
3.119  **set (sb) back** (phr v) – hinder (i.e., block or stop) sb's progress  ● The young couple had almost saved enough money to buy a new car, but losing their jobs set them back.  ﬁ παρεμποδίζω

3.120  **think (sth) over** (phr v) – consider sth further  ● If you're not sure that you want to accept their job offer, take a few days to think it over.  ﬁ καλοσκέφτομαι

3.121  **shake (sth) off** (phr v) – get rid of  ● I can’t shake off this cold. I’ve had it for three weeks.  ﬁ ξεφορτώνομαι

### Prepositions 2 (page 44)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>means</td>
<td>by all means</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>familiar</td>
<td>be familiar with sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>explain sth to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>by far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menu</td>
<td>on the menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lack</td>
<td>lack of sth (e.g., sleep, money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prone</td>
<td>be prone to sth / make sb prone to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning</td>
<td>in the morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effect</td>
<td>have an effect on sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be included</td>
<td>be included in sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all costs</td>
<td>at all costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be aware</td>
<td>be aware of sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whole</td>
<td>on the whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be different</td>
<td>be different from sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be full</td>
<td>be full of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be rich</td>
<td>be rich in sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**You are probably familiar with some of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)**

3.122  **by all means** (idm) – of course, certainly  ● ‘May I have another piece of cake?’ ‘By all means, help yourself.’  ﬁ Βεβαίως, οπωσδήποτε

3.123  **familiar** (adj) ➔ **be familiar with sb/sth** (v phr) – know about sb/sth, have knowledge of sb/sth; same as have a familiarity with sb/sth  ● I’m familiar with the novel, as I read it last summer.  ﬁ γνωρίζω, έχω, είμαι εξοικειωμένος με κτ/κτ

3.124  **by far** (prep phr) – by a great amount, undoubtedly  ● Henry is by far the best tennis player in the school. No one has ever beaten him.  ﬁ κατά πολύ, χαρισματικά

3.125  **lack (of sth)** (n) – (CAU) an instance of or the condition of having less of sth than is needed  ● The new teacher’s enthusiasm more than makes up for her lack of experience.  ﬁ lack (v), lacking (adj). Opp: an excess of sth  ﬁ έλλειψη

3.126  **prone** (adj) ➔ **be prone to (sth)** (v phr) – be likely to be affected or influenced by sth  ● Young children are prone to colds. / The low-lying coastal area is prone to flooding, so I’d advise you not to build a house there.  ﬁ έχω τάση/ροπή να παθαίνω κπ/κτ, είμαι επιρρεπής

3.127  **effect** (n) ➔ **have an effect on sb/sth** (v phr) – affect sb/sth, influence sb/sth in a certain way  ● That medicine had a bad effect on me: it made me feel so sleepy that I couldn’t keep my eyes open.  ﬁ affect (v), effective (adj), effectively (adv)  ﬁ φέρνω αποτέλεσμα ή ενέργεια, έχω επίδραση ή επιρροή σε κτ/κτ
According to the brochure, the tour of southern Spain costs £1,000. Unfortunately, the airfare from the UK to Spain is not included in the price.

- **inclusion (n)**, inclusive (adj), inclusively (adv).
- Opp: be excluded from sth

It rained several times while we were away, but on the whole we had a wonderful vacation.

- **rich (adj)** ➔ be rich in (sth) (v phr) – have a large amount of sth
- Opp: be impoverished (adj)

He's been under the weather ever since he had the flu last month. Hopefully he'll be feeling better soon.

Last year we were afraid that the company would have to close, but sales have been better this year so it looks like we're out of the woods.

- **be under the weather (idm)** – feel unwell
- **get cold feet (idm)** – have doubts about sth
- **be out of the woods (idm)** – be out of danger or difficulty
4.02 journey (n) – (C) an act of travelling from one place to another, a trip (esp. one over land, taking a long time and covering a considerable distance) • The travellers were understandably tired after the long train journey from London to Istanbul. ➢ journey (v) ταξίδη

4.03 travel (n) – 1. (U) the act of travelling • Her travels have taken her to more than thirty countries on five continents. ➢ traveller (n), travelling (n), travel (v), well-travelled (adj) ➢ εκδρομή

4.04 trip (n) ➢ business trip (n phr) – (C) a trip taken for work (not pleasure) • On his business trip, the managing director visited clients in Japan, China and South Korea. ➢ επαγγελματικό ταξίδι

4.05 tour (n) ➢ package tour (n phr) – (C) complete holiday arranged by a travel company (including travel, hotel, meals, excursions, etc.) • The older couple prefer going on package tours, because everything is arranged for them in advance by a travel company. ➢ οργανωμένη εκδρομή

4.06 voyage (n) – (C) long journey by sea or through space • A voyage across the Atlantic from England to the United States takes about five days in a large cruise ship. / The astronaut has been on three space voyages. ➢ voyager (n), voyage (v) ➢ ακτοπλοϊκό, διαστημικό ταξίδι

4.08 carriage (n) – (C) (train) one of several sections or parts that carry passengers; also called wagon or car • The train had ten carriages plus the main engine. ➢ βαγόν

4.09 deck (n) – 1. (C) (ship, boat) the top outside floor • On our cruise of the Caribbean, we loved to go out on the deck to watch the sun setting. 2. (ship, bus) one of the levels or floors inside • Our cabin was on Deck 5. / London is famous for its red double-decker buses. We liked sitting on the top deck, where the views were better. ➢ 1. καθαρσία 2. επάνω

4.10 floor (n) – 1. (C) (building) one of the inside levels into which a building is divided • The managing director had a corner office on the 45th floor of the 50-storey skyscraper. 2. the lower surface of a room (on which one walks) • Be careful when you walk into the kitchen. I’ve just washed the floor, so it may be slippery. ➢ flooring (n) • 1. όροφος 2. πάτωμα

4.11 storey (n) – (C) (building) one of the several levels that make up a building (usually as seen from the outside) • The Empire State Building in New York has 102 storeys. Its observation decks are located on the 86th and 102nd floors. ➢ όροφος

4.12 charge (n) – (C/U) amount of money requested for a service • If you order something online, be prepared to pay a charge for postage or delivery. / The restaurant will deliver your take-away order free of charge. ➢ charge (v) χρέωση

4.13 fare (n) – (C/U) amount charged for a trip or journey • Plane fares have increased dramatically over the past few years. / Do you have enough money for bus fare? ➢ ναύλα, εισιτήριο

4.14 fee (n) – 1. (C) money paid to be allowed to do sth or (e.g., to a professional) for advice or services provided; similar to charge (see 4.12) • To encourage the use of public transportation, the city now charges a fee for driving into the city centre. / For a small yearly fee, students may use the school’s library and gym facilities. / Everything costs more these days: tuition fees, exam fees, you name it! ➢ χρέωση, δαπάνη, αμοιβή, (για αποδείξεις) δίδακτρα, (για εξετάσεις) εξετάστρα

4.15 ticket (n) – (C) piece of paper or small card that gives sb the right to do sth (e.g., travel, attend a
4.17 toll (n) – (C) (bridges, roads, etc.) money paid to use a particular road or bridge • If you’re planning on hiring a car when you’re on holiday in the USA, remember that you’ll have to pay a toll to use many of the major highways and bridges.  ❖ διοδία

4.18 border (n) – (C) (geography) the imaginary line dividing two countries, the land on either side of this line • When travelling between the United States and Canada, you will usually be asked to show your passport on both sides of the border.  ❖ σύνορα, μεθόριος

4.19 direction (n) – 1. (C/U) (travel) the general position (e.g., north, south, east or west) which sb moves or points towards • If the river is on your left, that means you’re travelling in a northerly direction. / As soon as we got on the motorway, I realised we were going in the wrong direction. / John has no sense of direction. He always gets lost when we travel together. 2. (C – usually plural) instructions on how to get to a place • The directions you gave us were very clear; we found the house with no problem.  ❖ οδηγίες, οδηγίες (idm) – meet by chance 1. κατακόρυφοι 2. αόριστοι

4.20 path (n) – 1. (C) a way or track that is made through sth (e.g., a garden, park or forest) and intended for people to walk on • You won’t get lost in the forest if you stay on the path. 2. (people’s) paths cross / cross paths with sb (idm) – meet by chance • When we met on holiday five years ago, neither of us imagined that our paths would cross again. / While travelling in the UK last summer, I crossed paths with my English teacher.  ❖ οδός, ροδός, κοιτασματική κηπουριά

4.21 route (n) – (C) the way one travels from one place to the other • We usually drive to work on the motorway, but if traffic is bad we take a different route.  ❖ πορεία

4.22 trail (n) – 1. (C) a path or track (see 4.20) through the countryside (often rougher than a path) 2. nature trail (n phr) – a path through an area (e.g. a forest, national park or nature reserve) especially designed for people to see interesting plants, animals and physical features along the way • We spent the morning walking along a number of interesting nature trails in the Lake District.  ❖ καθαρός, οίλοφάνερος, σαφής 2. είναι φως-φανάρι

3. a line or series of marks left by sb/sth

4.16 tip (n) – (C) (hotels, restaurants, taxi, etc.) small amount of money left to thank sb for providing a service; informal for gratuity • In some countries a service charge is included in the bill, but it’s still customary to leave a small tip on the table if you were satisfied with the service.  ❖ φιλοδώρημα

4.19 direction (n) – 1. (C/U) (travel) the general position (e.g., north, south, east or west) which sb moves or points towards • If the river is on your left, that means you’re travelling in a northerly direction. / As soon as we got on the motorway, I realised we were going in the wrong direction. / John has no sense of direction. He always gets lost when we travel together. 2. (C – usually plural) instructions on how to get to a place • The directions you gave us were very clear; we found the house with no problem.  ❖ οδηγίες, οδηγίες (idm) – meet by chance 1. κατακόρυφοι 2. αόριστοι

4.20 path (n) – 1. (C) a way or track that is made through sth (e.g., a garden, park or forest) and intended for people to walk on • You won’t get lost in the forest if you stay on the path. 2. (people’s) paths cross / cross paths with sb (idm) – meet by chance • When we met on holiday five years ago, neither of us imagined that our paths would cross again. / While travelling in the UK last summer, I crossed paths with my English teacher.  ❖ οδός, ροδός, κοιτασματική κηπουριά

4.21 route (n) – (C) the way one travels from one place to the other • We usually drive to work on the motorway, but if traffic is bad we take a different route.  ❖ πορεία

4.22 trail (n) – 1. (C) a path or track (see 4.20) through the countryside (often rougher than a path) 2. nature trail (n phr) – a path through an area (e.g. a forest, national park or nature reserve) especially designed for people to see interesting plants, animals and physical features along the way • We spent the morning walking along a number of interesting nature trails in the Lake District.

4.23 way (n) – 1. route, course of travel that one takes to get to a place • I usually drive up the High Street to get to the office. Which way do you go? 2. lose one’s way (idm) – get lost • Now that I have a GPS in my car, I rarely lose my way.  ❖ δρόμος, πορεία 2. χάνω το δρόμο μου.

Note: For other idioms with way see 2.138 and 2.139.

E (page 59)

Similar but different: apparent, clear, obvious, plain – In many cases, apparent, clear, obvious and plain can be used interchangeably to mean ‘easily seen or understood’: e.g., It’s apparent / It’s clear / It’s obvious / It’s plain that Julia and Steven are deeply in love. When it comes to collocations, however, the words follow their own rules, as can be seen in the following entries. In addition, clear and plain have a number of other meanings / uses that should be noted as well: e.g., a clear explanation, a clear blue sky, a clear road, a voice that is loud and clear, plain food, a plain brown envelope, a rather plain young man.

4.24 apparent (adj) – 1. easy to see or understand; similar to clear, obvious, plain, evident • From what she says in her email, it is apparent that her new job is very stressful. 2. for no apparent reason (prep phr) – without seeming to have a specific reason for doing sth • He quit his job for no apparent reason.  ❖ 1. φως 2. για μην προφανή ίδιο

4.25 clear (adj) – 1. easy to see or understand; similar to apparent, obvious, plain, evident • It’s clear that she’s in love. / Have I made myself perfectly clear? 2. crystal clear (adj phr) – (fig - intensifier) extremely easy to understand, leaving no doubt in anyone’s mind • I thought I was crystal clear about your coming home before midnight! / Her English teacher is famous for her crystal-clear grammar explanations.  ❖ clear (n), clear (v), clearly (adv) 2. προφανής

4.26 obvious (adj) – 1. easy to see or understand; similar to apparent, obvious, plain, evident 2. for obvious reasons (prep phr) – or reasons that are so clear that they don’t need to be explained • Tina is pregnant with triplets, so she and her husband are looking for a bigger flat to move into for obvious reasons.  ❖ 1. φως 2. για προφανή ίδιο

4.27 plain (adj) – 1. easy to see or understand; similar to apparent, obvious, clear, evident • It’s plain that the country is in the middle of an economic crisis. 2. it’s as plain as the nose on (one’s) face (idm) – it’s extremely obvious • It’s as plain as the nose on your face that they are having problems again.  ❖ plainness (n), plainly (adv) 2. είναι φως-φανάρι
4.28 **bank** (n) – (C) (rivers) ground on either side of a river • We had a picnic on the bank of the river and watched the boats go by. / The Left Bank of Paris is a well-known area on the south bank of the Seine River. ➖ **τόπος** (μέρος)

4.29 **bed** (n) – (C) (seas, rivers, lakes) ground found at the bottom of a sea, river or lake (e.g. river bed, lake bed, sea bed) • The lake bed was a thick layer of soft, brown mud that made it difficult to walk through the water. ➖ **κατάσταση** (μέρος), **μέρος**

4.30 **bottom** (n) – (C) the lowest point, part or surface of something (e.g. the bottom of a mountain, the bottom of the ocean) • We were exhausted by the time we reached the bottom of the mountain again. / The sunken boat was found by divers at the bottom of the ocean. ➖ **κάτω** (μέρος), **μέρος**

4.31 **coast** (n) – (C) the edge of the land that touches the sea • The states of California, Oregon and Washington are on the western coast of the USA. / The southern coast of the island was lined with tall cliffs, while the northern coast was long, low-lying beaches. ➖ **κόσμος** (μέρος)

4.32 **resort** (n) – (C) place where people go on holiday • The popular seaside resort has dozens of hotels, restaurants and centres for organised activities such as water-skiing and horse-back riding. / Chamonix is a famous ski resort in the French Alps, but it’s also beautiful in summer. ➖ **κοιτή**

4.33 **shore** (n) – (C) low-lying land along the edge of a sea, lake or ocean • My brother and I spent all afternoon in the sea, while our parents watched us from the shore. / The island’s northern shore was a series of beautiful sandy beaches, separated by rougher, rocky areas. / We anchored the boat and swam to shore. ➖ **περιβάλλον**, **περιβάλλον**

4.34 **edge** (n) – (C) the part farthest away from the centre of sth, the outside limit of an area • As I looked over the edge of the high cliff onto the rocks below, I suddenly became afraid of falling. / Don’t put the glass so near to the edge of the table; it might fall off. / It took us two hours to reach the edge of the forest. ➖ **κόμη**, **κόμη** (μέρος)

4.35 **location** (n) – (C) place or position, where sth is located or found • The restaurant used to be at 5 High Street, but it recently moved to a new location further down the street. ➖ **σημείο**, **σημείο**

4.36 **place** (n) ➔ **there's no place like home** (saying) – home is the best place to be; there’s no place sweeter or more comfortable than your own home • After travelling round Europe for three months, he finally understood what people mean when they say ‘There’s no place like home.’ ➖ **κοίτη**, **κοίτη**

4.37 **point** (n) ➔ **meeting point** (n phr) – (C) (airport or other public place) place set aside where people can arrange to meet each other easily • When you pick up your suitcase from the baggage claim area, follow the signs that say ‘Meeting Point - International Arrivals.’ I’ll be waiting for you there. ➖ **κοίτη**, **κοίτη**;

4.38 **site** (n) – (C) area of ground on which sth is built or where a particular event or activity occurs • That building site is where our new school is being built. / We left the camp site at 9 a.m. and spent the morning visiting one of the archaeological sites in the area. ➖ **κόμη**, **κόμη**, **κόμη**

4.39 **spot** (n) – a particular place or point • I know the perfect spot to watch the sunset from. / This is the exact spot where the accident occurred. ➖ **κόμη**, **κόμη**

4.40 **background** (n) – (C) (of a photograph or picture) area behind the main people or objects • If you look closely, you can see a long white bridge in the background. ➖ **φόντο**, **φόντο**

4.41 **scenery** (n) – (U) landscape or natural surroundings, especially when regarded as beautiful or picturesque • We took some beautiful photographs of mountain scenery on our trip to the Rocky Mountains last year. ➖ **φωτογραφία**, **φωτογραφία**

4.42 **setting** (n) – (C) place or surroundings where sth is or happens • The novelist chose Greece as the setting for his new novel. / The tiny seaside chapel provided a perfect setting for the couple’s wedding. ➖ **φωτογραφία**, **φωτογραφία**

4.43 **surroundings** (pl n) – sb’s immediate environment (i.e., the things or conditions that surround sb); also, the area surrounding the place where sb is • When we brought the kittens home, they spent hours exploring their new surroundings. ➖ **κόμη**, **κόμη**, **κόμη**

4.44 **view** (n) – (C) the scene or area that can be seen from a particular place • From her new apartment, she has a great view of the river. ➖ **φωτογραφία**, **φωτογραφία**. See 2.23 for alternative meaning.
4.45  break down (phr v) – stop working • A mobile phone comes in handy if you have an old car like mine that breaks down all the time. ➢ break down (n), broken-down (adj) ➢ χαλώ. See 1.42 for alternative meaning.

4.46  catch up with (phr v) – draw level with (i.e., reach the same place, level, or position as sb) • After being ill for several months, the boy found it impossible to catch up with his classmates. / The children had run ahead of us, so we had to walk faster to catch up with them. ➢ προφτάινω, συμβαδίζω.

4.47  check in (phr v) – register at a hotel or for a flight • When we got to the hotel, we checked in at the reception desk and went straight to our room. / Due to increased security checks, airlines now ask that you check in at least two hours before an international flight. ➢ check-in (n) ➢ (σε ξενοδοχείο) δηλώνω την άφιξη μου, (σε αεροδρόμιο) κάνω επιβίβασης.

4.48  cut across (phr v) – take a shorter route through sth • You’ll arrive at the office a few minutes earlier if you cut across the main square instead of walking all the way around it. ➢ διασχίζω, κόβω δρόμο.

4.49  do without (phr v) – manage in the absence of • We’ll be able to buy a new car if we do without a holiday this year. / The widow had depended on her husband for so many things. How would she do without him? ➢ τα καταφέρνω χωρίς (κφ κτ)

4.50  feel up to (sth/doing sth) (phr v) – be capable of (e.g. because one is well prepared or feels well enough to do sth) • You’ve studied hard, so you should feel up to the challenge of the exam! / If you’re thinking about seeing Dan in hospital, call his wife and find out if he feels up to having visitors. ➢ είμαι ικανός (για κάνα κάνω κτ), είμαι σε θέση (να κάνω κτ).

4.51  get back (phr v) – return • He promised to call us as soon as he gets back from his business trip. ➢ γυρίζω πίσω, επιστρέφω.

4.52  get off (phr v) – get down from or out of sth (e.g., a bus, train, taxi), leave sth • I told the taxi driver that I wanted to get off at the next stop. ➢ κατεβαίνω, αποβιβάζομαι.

4.53  hold up (phr v) – 1. cause a delay, stop the progress of sth • A bad accident on the bridge held up traffic for more than an hour. 2. get held up (v phr) – be late or delayed (as a result of sth), suffer a delay • Our flight got held up for several hours due to poor weather conditions. ➢ holdup (n) ➢ 1. καθυστερώ, σταματώ 2. καθυστερούμαι.

4.54  pick up (phr v) – collect sb in a vehicle • I’ll pick you up at the train station at 6 o’clock, and we can go straight to the restaurant. ➢ παίρνω κάποιον στο σχέδιό μου με σκοπό να τον μεταφέρω κάπου. See 1.127 for alternative meanings.

---

### Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 60)

**A**

4.45 **break down** (phr v) – stop working • A mobile phone comes in handy if you have an old car like mine that breaks down all the time. ➢ break down (n), broken-down (adj) ➢ χαλώ. See 1.42 for alternative meaning.

4.46 **catch up with** (phr v) – draw level with (i.e., reach the same place, level, or position as sb) • After being ill for several months, the boy found it impossible to catch up with his classmates. / The children had run ahead of us, so we had to walk faster to catch up with them. ➢ προφτάινω, συμβαδίζω.

4.47 **check in** (phr v) – register at a hotel or for a flight • When we got to the hotel, we checked in at the reception desk and went straight to our room. / Due to increased security checks, airlines now ask that you check in at least two hours before an international flight. ➢ check-in (n) ➢ (σε ξενοδοχείο) δηλώνω την άφιξη μου, (σε αεροδρόμιο) κάνω επιβίβασης.

4.48 **cut across** (phr v) – take a shorter route through sth • You’ll arrive at the office a few minutes earlier if you cut across the main square instead of walking all the way around it. ➢ διασχίζω, κόβω δρόμο.

4.49 **do without** (phr v) – manage in the absence of • We’ll be able to buy a new car if we do without a holiday this year. / The widow had depended on her husband for so many things. How would she do without him? ➢ τα καταφέρνω χωρίς (κφ κτ)

4.50 **feel up to** (sth/doing sth) (phr v) – be capable of (e.g. because one is well prepared or feels well enough to do sth) • You’ve studied hard, so you should feel up to the challenge of the exam! / If you’re thinking about seeing Dan in hospital, call his wife and find out if he feels up to having visitors. ➢ είμαι ικανός (για κάνα κάνω κτ), είμαι σε θέση (να κάνω κτ).

4.51 **get back** (phr v) – return • He promised to call us as soon as he gets back from his business trip. ➢ γυρίζω πίσω, επιστρέφω.

4.52 **get off** (phr v) – get down from or out of sth (e.g., a bus, train, taxi), leave sth • I told the taxi driver that I wanted to get off at the next stop. ➢ κατεβαίνω, αποβιβάζομαι.

4.53 **hold up** (phr v) – 1. cause a delay, stop the progress of sth • A bad accident on the bridge held up traffic for more than an hour. 2. get held up (v phr) – be late or delayed (as a result of sth), suffer a delay • Our flight got held up for several hours due to poor weather conditions. ➢ holdup (n) ➢ 1. καθυστερώ, σταματώ 2. καθυστερούμαι.

4.54 **pick up** (phr v) – collect sb in a vehicle • I’ll pick you up at the train station at 6 o’clock, and we can go straight to the restaurant. ➢ παίρνω κάποιον στο σχέδιό μου με σκοπό να τον μεταφέρω κάπου. See 1.127 for alternative meanings.

---

### Prepositions 1 (page 60)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ahead</td>
<td>ahead of sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock</td>
<td>a knock on the door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay away</td>
<td>stay away from sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>close to sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coast</td>
<td>on the coast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a view</td>
<td>have a view of sth from some place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall asleep / wheel</td>
<td>fall asleep at the wheel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crash</td>
<td>crash into sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front</td>
<td>in front (of sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all / all</td>
<td>all in all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be included / price</td>
<td>be included in the price of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td>by train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurry</td>
<td>be in a hurry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search</td>
<td>in search of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reasonable price</td>
<td>at a reasonable price</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You are probably familiar with some of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

4.55 fall asleep at the wheel (idm) – fall asleep while one is driving. The lorry driver’s biggest fear was that he might fall asleep at the wheel during a long-distance drive. (prep phr) – to make sth fall asleep

4.56 all in all (idm) – to sum things up, generally speaking, when everything is considered. All in all, despite a few days of rain, their trip to Italy was the best holiday they had ever had.

4.60 common (adj) – ordinary, without special characteristics; also, widespread and therefore typical (not special). Mobile phones are much more common now than they were twenty years ago. How did we ever live without them? (prep phr) – commonness

4.61 physical (adj) – of or related to the body (as opposed to the mind or the spirit). The athlete is in excellent physical condition. (prep phr) – physically

4.62 logical (adj) – reasonable, rational, sensible; characterised by clear, sound thinking. He owes five of us money, so it’s not logical to think he’ll repay you if you lend him some, too! I’ve thought my plan through step by step, so how can you say it’s not logical? (prep phr) – logically

4.63 natural (adj) – of or related to the world of nature (e.g., plants, animals, etc.). Biologists and zoologists study the natural world. Hawaii is said to be a place of great natural beauty. (prep phr) – naturally

4.69 way (n) – make one’s way (idm) – go, travel (often at a slow pace). It took us over an hour to make our way to the top of the mountain.

Use of English Practice 1 (page 61)

Items 1-12

Most of the choices that accompany this passage have already appeared in previous sections. If you need help with them, review the sections referred to below.

1 For B C D, see Vocabulary 1: G.

2 For A, see Vocabulary 1: D. For B and D, see Vocabulary 1: F.

3 A B C D

4 For A B C D, see Vocabulary 1: H.

5 For A C D, see Vocabulary 1: F, G and A respectively

6 For A B C D, see Vocabulary 1: A.

7 For A, see Vocabulary 1: B. (Note that B and D are similar in meaning to A, but only A forms a set phrase with the word before the gap.)

8 A B D For C, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

4.64 cut down on (sth) (phr v) – reduce or limit (sth or an amount of sth). He stays slim because he goes to the gym every day; if he cuts down on his exercise, he’ll start to gain weight. You wouldn’t have so much trouble paying your rent every month if you would cut down on all the makeup and clothing you buy. (prep phr) – perιορίζω (kt)

4.65 keep off (sth) (phr v) – not go or walk on sth. The park attendant told us to keep off the grass. (prep phr) – μενω/κρατάω μακριά

4.66 drop out of (sth) (phr v) – leave a course, organisation, or competition. When his father died, he had to drop out of university and get a job to help support his family. She injured her knee and had to drop out of the race. (prep phr) – εκκατάλειψα

4.67 lane (n) – (C) narrow road or street, esp. one in a rural area or in a town or village with very narrow streets. The lanes outside the town were so narrow that there was barely room for a single car, let alone two going in opposite directions. They spent the morning exploring the winding cobblestone lanes of the old town. (prep phr) – περπάτησα, μονοπάτι

4.68 trek (n) – (C) long, difficult overland journey (usually on foot). The climbers woke up at sunrise and prepared themselves for the long trek up the mountain. (prep phr) – τρέχω (οδοιπορικό, μακρύ και θαλασσίο ταξίδι)

4.69 in a hurry (prep phr) – rushed, in a rushed manner. I can see you’re in a hurry, so I’ll talk to you later when you have more time. It was crystal clear that her student had written the composition in a hurry as it was full of mistakes. (prep phr) – βιαζόμαι, είμαι βιαστικός, κάνω κτ με βιασύν

4.70 in search of (prep phr) – in order to find or look for. He’s been walking up and down the street all day in search of his lost cat. (prep phr) – αναζητάω για κτ

4.71 at a reasonable price (idm) – at a price that many people can afford. (prep phr) – θαυμάζω για κτ

9 B D For A C, see Vocabulary 1: D.

10 For A B C D, see Vocabulary 1: C.

11 For D, see Vocabulary 1: G.

12 B
Similar but different: arrive, get, reach vs. approach
The verbs arrive, get and reach are virtually identical in meaning, but learners need to be careful about how each is used. In particular, note the following:

arrive at my destination - arrive in Rome - arrive at my hotel
get to my destination - get to Rome - get to my hotel
reach my destination - reach Rome - reach my hotel

Before we arrive at, get to, or reach a destination, we move nearer/closer to it. In other words, we approach it.

approach a place = move close/nearer to a place

4.70 approach (v) – move closer to, get nearer ● (with object) As we approached the bridge, traffic slowed down. / (without object) I signalled him to approach. ➢ approach (n), approachable (adj) ➢ πολύακι

4.71 arrive (v) – reach ● We arrived tired but safe. / The flight arrived at Heathrow Airport at 7 o’clock. ➢ arrival (n) ➢ προέβλεψη

4.72 get to (v) – reach a place, arrive ● We got to the station five minutes before the train left. ➢ φτάνω

4.73 reach (v) – arrive, get to ● We’ll call you as soon as we reach our hotel. ➢ reach (n), reachable (adj) ➢ φτάνω

B (page 64)

4.74 combine (v) – 1. unite or mix together (often to the point where they merge together and no longer appear separate) ● The two classes were so small that the director decided to combine them into one larger class. / If you combine black with white, the result is grey. 2. combined with (adj phr) – in combination with, added to ● The key to her success was lots of hard work combined with a little bit of luck. ➢ combination (n), combined (adj)

4.75 connect (v) – 1. join, link ● The bridge connects the two parts of the city. / A long electrical cord connects my computer to its power supply. 2. connecting flight (n phr) – a flight that a passenger takes soon after arriving on a previous flight in order to continue a journey, same as connection ● You can fly from New York to Greece non-stop, but it’s cheaper to fly to London or Rome and then get a connecting flight to Athens. ➢ connection (n), connecting (adj), connected (adj), connective (adj). ➢ Opp: disconnect ➢ 1. συνδέω 2. συνδέωση

4.76 divide (v) – 1. separate or be separated into parts ● The teacher divided the class into four groups. / She divides her time between her flat in Manchester and her weekend cottage in the Lake District. 2. (maths) find how many times one number goes into another number ● If you divide 20 by 5, the answer is 4. ➢ division (n), divided (adj)

4.77 join (v) → join (sb) (v) – go somewhere with sb ● We’re going to the cinema tonight. Would you like to join us? ➢ joint (n, adj), jointly (adv) ➢ συμμετεχω κανένα με τον, κάνω συνεργεία με κε

4.78 share (v) – have or use with another person ● Joan shares a flat with several of her friends from university. ➢ share (n), shared (adj) ➢ μοιράζομαι

C (page 64)

4.79 absolutely (adv) – (as an intensifier, before an adj) totally, completely, unquestionably, unconditionally ● The film was absolutely amazing. Don’t miss it! ➢ absolute (adj) ➢ απολύτως, ενεργός, ανάμιγγα

4.80 certainly (adv) – surely, definitely ● I’ll certainly be at the party tomorrow. I wouldn’t miss it for anything! ➢ certain (adj) ➢ ασφαλώς, ασφαλές, σίγουρα

4.81 fully (adv) – 1. in every way possible, totally, entirely ● I fully agree that we should give the job to the first person we interviewed. 2. at least, no less than ● Fully 70% of voters think the Prime Minister is doing an excellent job. ➢ fullness (n), full (adj) ➢ 1. ενεργός, ενεργός, απολύτως 2. τουλάχιστον, πολύ

4.82 greatly (adv) – very much, to a considerable or very great degree ● His driving skills will improve greatly after he’s had a few driving lessons. / She is proud of her greatly improved English. ➢ greatness (n), great (adj) ➢ πολύ

4.83 highly (adv) – (usually used as an intensifier, for emphasis, before an adj/adv) very much, to a high degree ● To be a scientist or a mathematician, you need to be highly intelligent. / She is the most highly paid manager in the company. / Both brothers are highly talented musicians. ➢ height (n), high (adv) ➢ πάρα πολύ, εξαιρετικά

4.84 terribly (adv) – 1. (as an intensifier before adj) very, quite, extremely ● We were terribly disappointed when they said they couldn’t join us for the weekend. / I’m terribly sorry that I didn’t call you this morning. 2. very badly ● The team has been playing terribly the last few weeks, so it’s no wonder they finished in last place. ➢ terrible (adj) ➢ 1. πολύ, πάρα πολύ 2. χάρη, αδυναμία
4.85 exact (adj) ➔ 1. precise, accurate, not approximate • He called to give me the exact price of the computer.
2. exact science (n phr) ➔ (C) a science that depends on accurate (as opposed to approximate) measurement and calculations as well as predictions that can be carefully quantified and expressed in precise mathematical terms • Physics, chemistry, mathematics, and astronomy are considered to be exact sciences. 3. be the exact opposite of (sb/sth) (idm) – be completely different, be the reverse of sth • It’s amazing how two children from the same family can be the exact opposite of each other. Mary is kind and generous, while Melinda is cruel and selfish. ➔ exactly (n), exactly (adv). ➔ Opp: inexactly ➔ 1. ακριβώς 2. σωστά

4.86 precise (adj) – exact, careful about every small detail, specific • I need to know the precise cost of the computer before I agree to buy it. A rough guess is not good enough. ➔ precision (n), precisely (adv). ➔ Opp: imprecise ➔ ακριβώς

4.87 proper (adj) – (informal) right, correct, in the true sense of the word • Of course, you’re exhausted. You haven’t had a proper night’s sleep in weeks. ➔ properly (adv). ➔ Opp: improperly ➔ σωστά

4.88 right (adj) – correct, not wrong • Who knows the right answer? / You were right not to trust him. ➔ rightness (n), rightly (adv) ➔ σωστά

4.89 suitable (for) (adj) – right or appropriate for a particular situation or purpose • Do you think my leather skirt is suitable for my job interview? / We offered her the job because she was the most suitable candidate. ➔ suitability (n), suit (v), suitably (adv). ➔ Opp: unsuitable ➔ κατάλληλος

4.90 valid (adj) – that can be legally used or accepted • Your passport is no longer valid because it expired a month ago. ➔ validity (n), validly (adv). ➔ Opp: invalid ➔ έγκυρος, ισχύος

4.91 access (to sth) (n) – (CU) way of approaching or entering a place, also, the ability to approach or enter a place • The narrow mountain road was the only access to the village. / The snow cut off all access to the village. ➔ access (v), accessible (adj) ➔ πρόσβαση

4.92 crossing (n) – 1. (C) journey across sth (e.g., a body of water or the border between two countries) • I usually love to travel by ferry, but bad weather can make a normally easy crossing quite uncomfortable. / In an attempt to prevent illegal crossings, the USA and Mexico are tightening security at the border. 2. place where one can cross sth safely (e.g., a road, railway tracks, a border) • It’s safer to cross the street at a pedestrian crossing. ➔ cross (v) ➔ 1. διάβαση, διάσχιση 2. διαδρόμο

4.93 cruise (n) – (C) journey by ship, usually for pleasure and often stopping at more than one place • My friend has booked a seven-day cruise of the Hawaiian islands on a luxury sailboat. ➔ cruise (v) ➔ κρουαζιέρα

4.94 expedition (n) – (C) organised journey with a specific purpose (e.g., exploration) • The scientist has been on several expeditions to Antarctica over the course of his career. ➔ expeditionary (adj) ➔ εξερεύνηση, αποστολή

4.95 passage (n) – (U) the act of passing through or along sth • We took a lot of photographs from our cruise ship on its passage through the Panama Canal. ➔ pass (v) ➔ περιπέτεια

4.96 trek (n) – see 4.68

4.97 circumstance (n) ➔ circumstances (pl n) – 1. all of the facts or conditions that are relevant to a particular event or situation • His difficult financial circumstances make it impossible for him to buy a new car. 2. under the circumstances (prep phr) – given the (difficult) nature of the situation, in this particular situation • Under the circumstances, I think you did the right thing by keeping what happened a secret. You can tell her later, when things calm down. ➔ circumstantial (adj) ➔ 1. συνθήκες 2. κάτω από αυτές τις συνθήκες, από αυτή την περίπτωση

4.98 condition (n) – (U) the shape or state of sb/sth, esp. with regard to appearance, quality, health, etc. • Her grandfather is in good condition, considering he’s 80 years old. / The car is only three years old, but it’s in terrible condition. ➔ conditional (adj), conditionally (adv) ➔ κατάσταση

4.99 consequence (n) – result • Before you quit your job, make sure you consider all of the consequences carefully. ➔ consequential (adj), consequentially (adv) ➔ αποτέλεσμα

D (page 64)

Similar but different: exact vs. precise – In many cases, these two words can be used interchangeably. For example, we can refer to an exact or precise number of guests, or the precise or exact location of something. However, set phrases exist where one and not the other is normally used: e.g., give sb exact change, submit an exact copy of sth, be the exact opposite of sb/sth, find the precise word for sb/sth, be very precise about what you want from sb. When it comes to very fine differences in measurement, we usually use precise. For example, scientific instruments (known as precision instruments) are capable of making very fine, precise measurements (e.g., in parts of a milligram or a millimetre).

E (page 64)

4.91 access (to sth) (n) – (CU) way of approaching or entering a place, also, the ability to approach or enter a place • The narrow mountain road was the only access to the village. / The snow cut off all access to the village. ➔ access (v), accessible (adj) ➔ πρόσβαση

4.92 crossing (n) – 1. (C) journey across sth (e.g., a body of water or the border between two countries) • I usually love to travel by ferry, but bad weather can make a normally easy crossing quite uncomfortable. / In an attempt to prevent illegal crossings, the USA and Mexico are tightening security at the border. 2. place where one can cross sth safely (e.g., a road, railway tracks, a border) • It’s safer to cross the street at a pedestrian crossing. ➔ cross (v) ➔ 1. διάβαση, διάσχιση 2. διαδρόμο

4.93 cruise (n) – (C) journey by ship, usually for pleasure and often stopping at more than one place • My friend has booked a seven-day cruise of the Hawaiian islands on a luxury sailboat. ➔ cruise (v) ➔ κρουαζιέρα

4.94 expedition (n) – (C) organised journey with a specific purpose (e.g., exploration) • The scientist has been on several expeditions to Antarctica over the course of his career. ➔ expeditionary (adj) ➔ εξερεύνηση, αποστολή

4.95 passage (n) – (U) the act of passing through or along sth • We took a lot of photographs from our cruise ship on its passage through the Panama Canal. ➔ pass (v) ➔ περιπέτεια

4.096 trek (n) – see 4.68

F (page 65)

4.97 circumstance (n) ➔ circumstances (pl n) – 1. all of the facts or conditions that are relevant to a particular event or situation • His difficult financial circumstances make it impossible for him to buy a new car. 2. under the circumstances (prep phr) – given the (difficult) nature of the situation, in this particular situation • Under the circumstances, I think you did the right thing by keeping what happened a secret. You can tell her later, when things calm down. ➔ circumstantial (adj) ➔ 1. συνθήκες 2. κάτω από αυτές τις συνθήκες, από αυτή την περίπτωση

4.98 condition (n) – (U) the shape or state of sb/sth, esp. with regard to appearance, quality, health, etc. • Her grandfather is in good condition, considering he’s 80 years old. / The car is only three years old, but it’s in terrible condition. ➔ conditional (adj), conditionally (adv) ➔ κατάσταση

4.99 consequence (n) – result • Before you quit your job, make sure you consider all of the consequences carefully. ➔ consequential (adj), consequentially (adv) ➔ αποτέλεσμα
4.100 event (n) – sth that happens, esp. sth of importance • Graduating from university, getting married and the birth of her two children were among the most important events of her life so far. ➢ eventful (adj) ➢ γεγονός
4.101 situation (n) – (C) 1. set of circumstances (see 4.97) in which one finds oneself; state of affairs • He was in a difficult situation: if he disagreed with the boss, he might lose his job. ➢ κατάστασαν
4.102 state (of sth) (n) – (C) the particular condition that sb/sth is in at a particular time • The state of his finances will greatly improve when he gets a job. / Since she broke up with her boyfriend, she’s been in a state of depression. ➢ κατάστασαν

G (page 65)
4.103 complete (adj) – 1. whole, containing all parts of sth • I gave him the complete guest list yesterday. / No trip to Greece is complete without seeing the Acropolis. / He’s got the complete set of action toys now. Nothing is missing. 2. (as an intensifier before a noun, for emphasis) total, absolute, utter • He looked at us in complete amazement. 3. (pred adj) – finished, done • As of yesterday, work on their new kitchen is complete. ➢ completion (n), completeness (n), completely (adv). ➢ Opp: incomplete ➢ 1. πλήρης 2. πλήρης 3. ολόκληρος
4.104 entire (adj) – whole, all of • He spent his entire medical career hoping to find a cure for cancer. ➢ entirety (n), entirely (adv) ➢ ολοκληρωμένος
4.105 sum (n) 1. – (C) a particular amount (of sth, e.g., money) • Ten thousand dollars is a huge sum of money to pay for a used car in poor condition. 2. (C) the result of adding two or more numbers • The sum of 10 + 20 is 30. ➢ 1. ποσό 2. σύνολο, σύνολο, συνολικός
4.106 total (n) – (C) the whole amount or number of sth • The famous basketball player scored a total of over 32,000 points during his NBA career. ➢ total (adj), total up (phr v), totally (adv) ➢ σύνολο.
Note: As an adjective, total can mean ‘complete or absolute’ (e.g., They drove home in total silence.) ➢ πλήρης, απολήπτος, συνολικός

H (page 65)

Similar but different: cause, happen, lead, occur, result – Although these words can be used to express a similar meaning, learners need to be careful about how each is used. In particular, note the prepositions and other structures in the following equivalent phrases:

4.107 cause (v) – make happen/occur, bring about, result in, lead to • The police investigations showed that icy road conditions caused the accident. ➢ cause (n) ➢ προκαλώ, επιφέρω
4.108 happen (v) – 1. sth happens (v) – (of an event) take place, occur • The accident happened so quickly that no one knew what caused it. / What happened next? 2. sth happens to sb (v phr) – sb experiences sth, sth is experienced by sb • Did you hear what happened to Paul? He broke his leg in a skiing accident. 3. sb happens to do sth (v phr) – sb does sth by chance • If you happen to see Sheila, please send her my regards. ➢ happening (n) ➢ 1. κτ συμβαίνει 2. κτ μου συμβαίνει, 3. τυχαίνω
4.109 lead (to sth) (v) – cause sth, bring sth about, result in • The economic crisis led to factory closures and the loss of many thousands of jobs. ➢ προκαλώ, επιφέρω
4.110 occur (v) – 1. sth occurs (v) – (of an event) take place, happen • The earthquake occurred at 7 a.m. 2. sth occurs to sb (v phr) – (of a thought or idea) come into sb’s mind • The thought never occurred to me. / It suddenly occurred to me that the company might be in trouble. ➢ occurrence (n) ➢ 1. κτ συμβαίνει 2. τυχαίνω από το μυαλό
4.111 result (in sth) (v) – cause sth, bring sth about, lead to • The new advertising campaign resulted in record profits for the company. ➢ result (n), resultant (adj), resulting (adj) ➢ προκαλώ, επιφέρω.
Note: Don’t confuse result in sth with result from sth (happen or occur as a consequence of sth): e.g., Several problems resulted from his borrowing the car without his father’s permission. ➢ προκύπτω, απορρέω
Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 66)

A

4.112 make for (phr v) – move toward (a place) • Hungry and thirsty after a long hike in the woods, we returned to the town we were staying in and made for the nearest restaurant.  κατευθύνομαι, τραβώ (προς)

4.113 make out (phr v) – manage to see clearly • As we get closer to the city, you’ll be able to make out the skyscrapers in the distance. / It was difficult to make out where we were in the thick fog.  διακρίνω

4.114 pull up (phr v) – (of a driver and vehicle) slow down and stop (e.g., at the side of a road) • The children ran to meet their father as soon as they saw his car pull up in front of the house.  (για οδηγό και οχήμα) σταματώ (στην άκρη του δρόμου)

4.115 run into (phr v) – collide with, hit • A teenager driver ran into her car whilst she was stopped at a red light.  τρακάρω, πέφτω πάνω σε

4.116 see off (phr v) – say goodbye to sb (e.g., at an airport or train station)  ξεπροβοδίζω

4.117 set off (phr v) – leave on a journey • On the day he set off on his trip to China, his friends went to the airport with him to see him off.  ξεκινώ ταξίδι, φεύγω

4.118 show up (phr v) – (informal) arrive (often unexpectedly) similar to turn up • Tom hadn’t been invited to the wedding, so everyone was surprised when he showed up just before the ceremony began.  παρουσιάζομαι, εμφανίζομαι

4.119 stop off (phr v) – break a journey briefly, make a quick stop somewhere (on one’s way to somewhere else) • They stopped off at the supermarket on their way home from the football match. ➞ stopoff (n)  σταματώ κάπου για λίγο, κάνω (ενδιάμεση) στάση

4.120 take off (phr v) – (of an aircraft) leave the ground • The aeroplane took off as soon as all the passengers were seated. ➞ takeoff (n)  απογειώνομαι

4.121 turn back (phr v) – reverse the direction of a journey, return the way one has come • The cyclist was forced to turn back when she discovered a large tree had fallen across the trail.  γυρίζω πίσω

Prepositions 2 (page 66)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>warn</td>
<td>warn sb about sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return</td>
<td>return to a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>familiar</td>
<td>be familiar to sb (vs. be familiar with sb/sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>differ</td>
<td>differ from sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive / left</td>
<td>drive on the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>particular</td>
<td>in particular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happen</td>
<td>happen to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similar</td>
<td>be similar to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight</td>
<td>a flight to somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instead</td>
<td>instead of sth/doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>help sb with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whole</td>
<td>on the whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>popular</td>
<td>be popular with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rail</td>
<td>travel by rail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high speed</td>
<td>at high speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>on foot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

4.122 in particular (prep phr) – 1. (after nothing or other indefinite pronoun) special • Are you going to do anything in particular when you’re in Oxford this weekend? 2. especially, specifically, particularly • The boss wants us all to clean up our offices, in particular our desks. ➢ particular (n, adj)
   ❖ 1. συγκεκριμένο, ιδιαίτερο 2. συγκεκριμένα, ειδικά

4.123 instead (of) – see 3.79, esp. note at end of entry

4.124 on the whole (prep phr) – in general, generally speaking; similar to all in all (see 4.56) • It rained several times while we were away, but on the whole we had a wonderful vacation. ➢ γενικά

4.125 by rail (prep phr) – same as by train • She decided to go from London to Edinburgh by rail as she finds train travel more relaxing than flying. ➢ σιδηροδρομικώς

4.126 go on foot (prep phr) – walk • The supermarket is only four blocks away, so let’s go on foot. ➢ πηγαίνω με τα πόδια
5.01 broadcast (n) – (C) a radio or television programme or transmission

5.02 channel (n) – (C) (TV) a specific band of waves that is used by a particular TV company

5.03 monitor (n) – (computer) part of a computer that displays information and images

5.04 network (n) – (C) any large system of connected parts or pathways (e.g., computers, electrical wires, roads) that cross each other like the lines of a net

5.05 screen (n) – (C) any glass, plastic or cloth surface on which images are viewed (e.g., on a TV, a computer monitor or at the cinema)

5.06 signal (n) – (C) series of electrical waves that carry sound, pictures, data, etc.

5.07 station (n) – (C) 1. (radio) a specific band of waves that is used by a particular radio company 2. (C) a company involved in broadcasting TV and/or radio programmes

5.08 development (n) – 1. (U) the step-by-step growth and expansion of sth into a better, more advanced form 2. (U) work that involves studying and discovering facts about something

5.09 experiment (n) – (C) a test, especially a scientific one, carried out in order to see if a hypothesis is correct or what the results of a particular course of action will be; also, any attempt to do something new or to see what will happen

5.10 research (n) – (U) work that involves studying and discovering facts about something

5.11 test (n) – (C) (of a product) a procedure intended to show the quality and reliability of sth

5.04 A (page 74)

Similar but different: channel vs. station, monitor vs. screen – TV programmes are sent out over the airwaves on a particular channel; radio programmes can be heard on a particular station. To further complicate things, station (among many other uses) can also mean a company involved in TV and/or radio broadcasting: e.g., CNN is an international television station.

Knowing when to use the words monitor and screen is also tricky. A computer monitor is a device, part of which is a screen (where information and/or pictures are displayed). Similarly, a TV is a device, part of which is a screen. To further complicate things, if you work in a TV studio, you will also see TV monitors (where people like producers and directors can see what is being videoed). In general, monitor refers to a device or piece of equipment, part of which is a screen that displays images.
tests to make sure they are safe and road-worthy. ➢ test (v), tested (adj) δοκιμή, δοκιμάσια, τεστ, εξέταση. See 3.17 for alternative meaning.

5.12 trial (n) – (C) an act of testing sth to find out if it works properly and is safe • After three years of clinical trials, the government has decided that the new drug is safe for human use. ➢ try (v), trial (adj) δοκιμή

5.13 supply (n) – (C) amount or quantity of sth that is available for use • Our office keeps a large supply of pens, pencils, paper and other office supplies on hand. / The world’s supply of oil is quickly decreasing. ➢ supplier (n), supply (v) εφόδια, αποθέμα, προμήθεια

5.14 support (n) ➔ technical support (n phr) – (U) a service that provides customers with help and advice about how to use sth (e.g., a computer, mobile phone, tablet, etc.); a department within a company that helps maintain the company’s computers (e.g., a computer, mobile phone, tablet, etc.); a department within a company that helps maintain the company’s computers • If you need help installing the new software program, call technical support. ➢ τεχνική υποστήριξη

C (page 73)

5.15 planet (n) – (C) large spherical object that moves around a star • The Earth is the third closest planet to the sun. ➢ planetary (adj) κενό, πλανήτης

5.16 satellite (n) – (C) a man-made object whose purpose is to be put into orbit around the Earth to collect and transmit information • Areas like weather forecasting and news broadcasting have been revolutionised by communications satellites. ➢ δορυφόρος

5.17 space (n) ➔ in space (prep phr) – (U) – in a place beyond the Earth’s atmosphere • The rocket was launched a few hours ago and is now somewhere in space on its way to Jupiter. ➢ στο διάστημα

5.18 star (n) – (C) (in space) a large ball of burning gas that appears as a point of light in the night sky • The Sun is the nearest star to Earth. ➢ αστέρι

5.19 vacuum (n) – 1. (C) (physics, astronomy) a space or area that is completely empty of all gas or air • Outer space is a vacuum. / If you suck all the air out of a container, you create a vacuum. 2. vacuum cleaner (n phr) – (in British English, also called hoover) ➢ electromechanical device that cleans floors and carpets by sucking up dirt, etc. • Owners of dogs and cats are well advised to purchase a good-quality vacuum cleaner to keep their homes free of animal hair. ➢ vacuum (v) ➢ 1. (φυσική) κενό, κενό αέρας 2. πληκτρική σκούπα

D (page 74)

5.20 discover (v) – be the first to find or observe sth; also, learn or find out; find by chance • Sir Isaac Newton is credited with having discovered the laws of gravity. / Most students learn that Columbus discovered America in 1492, but in fact the Viking Leif Ericson got there first, in the year 1000. / We arrived home only to discover that our house had been burgled. ➢ discovery (n) ονομάζω, ανακαλύπτω

5.21 explore (v) – travel around an area to find out what it is like; also, study a subject in great depth • Many tourists rent cars so they can explore the countryside at their own pace. / The international community is finally getting serious about exploring solar, wind and other forms of alternative energy. ➢ exploration (n), explorer (n), exploratory (adj) εξερευνώ, διερευνώ

5.22 invent (v) – create or design sth that has not existed before • Samuel Morse invented the telegraph in 1844. ➢ invention (n), inventor (n), inventive (adj), inventively (adj) εφευρέσιο, εφευρέτης, εφευρετικά See 3.04 for alternative meaning.

5.23 recover (v) – find sth that was missing or stolen • The police have not yet recovered the jewellery that was stolen in the robbery. ➢ recovery (n), recovered (adj) επαναφέρω, επαναλέγω, επαναφέρον, επαναφέρεται

5.24 restore (v) – bring sth back or return sth to its original condition (e.g., by repairing or cleaning) • It took several days to restore electricity to the area after the terrible storm. / The painting looks much better now that museum experts have restored it. ➢ restoration (n), restorer (n), restored (adj) αποκαθιστώ, επαναφέρω, επαναλέγω, επαναφέρεται See 3.04 for alternative meaning.

5.25 return (to sth) (v) – go back to a particular time, place or state • If you could turn back the clock and return to your childhood, would you try to live your life differently? ➢ return (n), returnable (adj) επιστρέφω, γυρίζω, πίσω

E (page 75)

Similar but different: Note the prepositions and other structures in the following equivalent phrases:

achieve sth = succeed in doing sth = manage to do sth be capable of sth = be able to do sth

5.26 achieve (v) – succeed in reaching a goal through hard work or strong effort • After years of schooling and practical training, he finally achieved his goal of becoming a surgeon. ➢ achievement (n), achiever (n), achievable (adj) επιτυγχάνω, κατορθώνω

5.27 capable / capable of (sth/doing sth) (adj) – having the ability to do or achieve sth • She is a capable young woman who has a bright future ahead of her. / The teacher has a feeling that her star pupil will be capable of great things someday. / He’s only had a few years of experience, but he knows a lot and is quite capable of doing the job. ➢ capability (n), capably (adv). ➢ ικανός, ικανός, ικανότητα
5.28 fulfill (v) → fulfill one’s promise (as sth) (idm) – (in US English, fulfill) reach or realise the full extent of one’s inborn talents (or potential) as sth • With hard work and great dedication, the brilliant student went on to fulfill his promise as a gifted physicist.

5.29 manage (to do sth) (v) – succeed in doing what one sets out to do • She left her keys at work, but she managed to get in through a window in the kitchen that she had forgotten to lock. ➞ manager (n), management (n), manageable (adj). ➞ Opp: fail (to do sth) ➞ manageable (adj) ❖ καταφέρνω

5.30 succeed (in doing sth) (v) – achieve sth, manage to do sth • She succeeded in being the first person in her family to become a doctor. ➞ success (n), successful (adj), successfully (adv). ➞ Opp: fail (to do sth) ❖ καταφέρνω, πεπαινώ

5.31 accelerate (v) – cause sth to go faster or happen sooner; also, speed up, go faster • Industrialisation has accelerated the destruction of the environment. / A car accelerates when more petrol is pumped into the engine. ➞ acceleration (n), accelerated (adj). ➞ Opp: decelerate, slow down ❖ επιταχύνω, επιπεδεύω

5.32 eject (v) – (without object) escape from an aircraft or vehicle by being shot up and out of it, sometimes with the help of a special seat called an ejector seat • Realising the plane was going to crash, the pilot ejected and parachuted to safety. ➞ ejection (n), ejector (adj), ejected (adj) ❖ εκτοξεύω

Note: In general, eject has to do with pushing out or being pushed out with force: e.g., a volcano ejects lava, a security guard ejects an unwanted customer, a music lover ejects a CD from a CD player.

5.33 generate (v) – produce • It’s possible to generate electricity from the power of moving water. / The sales manager is hoping that the new advertising campaign will generate excitement and orders for the company’s new line of products. ➞ generation (n), generator (n), generative (adj) ❖ γεννώ, γεννήσω

5.34 launch (v) – send sth into the air, space, or water (e.g., a rocket, balloon, satellite or boat) • NASA will launch the rocket next week. / When the ship began to sink, the captain ordered his crew to launch the lifeboats. ➞ launch (n) ❖ εκτόξευση, καθελκύω

5.35 orbit (v) – move around sth in an orbit (i.e., a curved path that goes all the way around sth) • The Earth orbits the Sun in 365 days. ➞ orbit (n, v) ❖ κυκλώμα σε τροχιά

5.36 release (v) – (of energy or gas) allow to escape, send out or emit with great force • Stars are burning masses of gas that release massive amounts of energy. ➞ release (n), released (adj) ❖ απελευθέρωνω (ενέργεια), εκπέμψω

Note: In general, release has to do with allowing sb/sth to be set free or allowing sth to be made freely available: e.g., release sb from prison, release a student from class, release a book for publication.

5.37 form (n) – (C) type of sth • There are three basic forms of matter: gas, liquid, solid. / Monarchy is a form of government in which a country has a king, queen, or emperor. ➞ formation (n), form (v) ❖ έναδος, μορφή

5.38 fuel (n) – (C) material burned to produce heat or power • Common fuels include coal, petrol and oil. / The hope is that in the near future cars will run on cleaner fuels which will not pollute the environment. ➞ fuel (v) ❖ καύσιμη ύλη

5.39 gas (n) – (C) airtight substance which is neither liquid (like water) nor solid (like wood) ❖ άφρος

Note: In American English, the word gas (short for gasoline) is used instead of the word petrol.

5.40 liquid (adj) – in the form of a liquid (i.e., a substance that flows like water or oil, and is neither a gas nor a solid) • Water is a common liquid made up of two parts hydrogen and one part oxygen. ➞ liquid (n), liquefy (v), liquefied (adj) ❖ υγρός

5.41 material (n) – (C – often plural) substance(s) or thing(s) from which sth else can be made • Do you know what material (i.e., what cloth or fabric) this dress is made of? / Glass, steel and brick are common building materials. ➞ material (adj) ❖ υφή, υφικό, υφασμά

5.42 solid (adj) – firm and stable in shape (i.e., not liquid or gaseous) • Ice is water in solid form. • Solidity (n), solidify (v), solidly (adv) ❖ ασημένιος, ορθιός

Note: As a noun, a solid is something that is neither liquid nor gaseous: e.g., Metals such as iron and aluminium are solids, while the metal mercury is a liquid. ➞ ασθενές αόμη

5.43 substance (n) – (C) solid, powder, liquid, or gas with particular characteristics • Glue is a sticky substance. / Teflon is a substance that is commonly used to coat pans so that food will not stick to them. ➞ substantial (adj), substantive (adj), substantially (adv), substantively (adv) ❖ ουσία

F (page 75)

G (page 75)

H (page 75)
5.44 impact (n) – (C) strong effect or influence on sth
• Recent earthquakes in the area are bound to have a negative impact on tourism. ➢ impact (v)
■ ενδύσασα, αντίκτυπος

5.45 impression (n) – 1. (C) an idea, feeling or opinion about sth • I got the impression that he was upset about sth. / My first impression was that he was trustworthy, but he later proved me wrong.
2. make an impression on sb (v phr) – leave sb with a certain feeling about sb/sth • You’ll make a better impression at the interview if you wear a suit instead of those old jeans! ➢ impress (v), impressed (adj), impressive (adj), impressively (adv)
■ 1. εντύπωσα 2. κανώ εντύπωσα σε

5.46 influence (n) – (U) the ability to have an effect on sb’s actions, character or beliefs • His parents no longer have any influence on what the rebellious teenager does. / The politician used his influence to get tickets to the championship football match.
➢ influence (v), influential (adj), influentially (adv)
■ επιρροή

5.47 inspiration (n) – 1. (U) the process of being stimulated to do, feel or produce sth (e.g., a great idea or work of art) • Most artists say that inspiration is only part of the creative process; technique and hard work are also involved. 2. (C) sb/sth that causes such stimulation • The novelist’s mother and wife have always been inspirations for him. 3. a sudden good idea • I’ve just had an inspiration! Let’s throw Jill a surprise party for her birthday. ➢ inspire (v), inspired (adj), inspiring (adj), inspirational (adj)
■ (ευς. 1-3) έμπνευσιν

Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 76)

A

5.48 burst out (phr v) – 1. explode outwards • When magnetic storms burst out from the surface of the sun, it can cause problems here on Earth. 2. (of people and their emotions) suddenly do sth (as an expression of strong feeling) • Everyone burst out laughing when the clown tripped on the banana peel. / She burst out crying when she heard the news. ➢ outburst (n)
■ 1. εκρήγνυμαί 2. εξεσπώ (n.x. σε γέλια ή σε κλάματα)

5.49 carry out (phr v) – complete or conduct sth (e.g., a task or an order) • The plan will succeed if you carry out his orders exactly. / Many companies carry out market research before they decide to invest money in a new product. ➢ εκτελώ

5.50 catch on (phr v) – become popular • Mobile phones have really become popular. I wonder what new device will catch on next? ➢ «πάνω», σημειώνω επιτυχία. See 1.45 for alternative meaning.

5.51 come up against (phr v) – face (e.g., a problem or other difficulty) • The project will have to be delayed if the researchers come up against unexpected difficulties. ➢ συναντώ, αντιμετωπίζω (n.x. προβλήματα, δυσκολίες)

5.52 cut off (phr v) – stop or interrupt the flow of sth (e.g., supplies, communications) • If you don’t pay your bill, they will cut off your electricity.
■ διακόπτω
You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for two that you might need help with. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

5.58 fed up (pp/adj) ➔ be fed up (with sb/sth)
(idm) – be bored or dissatisfied with sb/sth ● She has every right to be angry. She’s fed up with him for never helping her around the house. / I’m fed up with my boring job. It’s time to look for something more interesting and less stressful. ● έχω βαθέθει, έχω μπουχτίσει

5.59 convert (v) – change, transform sth (e.g., from one thing into another) ● The solar panel on our roof converts sunlight into electrical energy. / On our return from the United Kingdom, we converted our pounds into euros. ➔ conversion (n), convertible (adj), converted (adj) ● μετατρέπω

Use of English Practice 1 (page 77)

Items 1-12: Choices

Most of the choices that accompany this passage have already appeared in previous sections. If you need help with one or more choices, review the sections referred to below.

1 For C, see Vocabulary 1: F.
2 C D For A, B, see Vocabulary 1: C

5.60 void (n) – (C) a completely empty space, an emptiness or vacuum (often used metaphorically) ● Her husband’s death left a huge void in her heart. / The rocket sped through the atmosphere and into the black void of space. ● κενό

5.61 gap (n) – (C) a space or opening in sth or between two things ● The sheep escaped through a gap in the fence. / She has a big gap between her two front teeth. ● τρύπα, άνοιγμα, χάσμα
5.65 key (n) – (typewriters, computer keyboards, etc.) any of the buttons that show letters, numbers, punctuation marks, etc. on a keyboard.

5.66 stick (n) ➔ 1. joy stick (n phr) – (C) (also: joystick) a handle or lever used to control direction and movement (e.g., in an aeroplane or on a special control panel for computer or video games). ➔ The pilot pulled the joystick back and the plane lifted off the runway.

5.67 switch (n) – (C) simple device that controls the flow of electricity in a circuit ➔ switch (v) ➔ διακόμωσ

5.68 defect (n) – (C) weak spot or imperfection in sth/sb; similar to fault (meaning 1) and flaw ➔ There’s a defect in the DCD that I bought yesterday, so I returned it to the shop and got my money back. / The child was born with a severe defect in his heart. / Her main character defect is that she doesn’t trust anyone. ➔ defective (adj), defectively (adv) ➔ ελλάτωμα, ατέλεια

5.69 error (n) – (C) mistake; also, (U) the state or condition of being wrong (e.g., in conduct or in judgement) ➔ Our teacher reminded us to check our compositions for spelling and grammar errors. / The aeroplane accident was caused by human error. / You’re in error if you think the boss is going to be pleased with what you did. ➔ φαίνω, σφάλμα

5.70 fault (n) – 1. (C) an unattractive or unsatisfactory feature; a break or other defect or flaw in sth ➔ His worst fault is his lack of self-confidence. / The office fire was caused by an electrical fault in the one of the computers. 2. be sb’s fault (v phr) ➔ be responsible for doing sth wrong or creating a bad situation ➔ Police determined that the accident was my fault. Luckily, no one was seriously injured. ➔ 1. ελλάτωμα 2. φαίνω, σφάλμα

5.71 flaw (n) – (C) imperfection, fault (meaning 1) ➔ He is overly kind, which some people see as a flaw in his character. / The diamond had a flaw in it, which is why it was relatively inexpensive. ➔ flawed (adj), flawlessly (adv) ➔ ελλάτωμα, ψεγάδι

5.72 leak (n) – (C) flow of liquid or gas that gets in or out of a hole or crack in sth; the hole or crack from which such a flow escapes ➔ Get a bucket, quick! There’s a leak in the pipe under the sink and the bathroom floor is all wet! ➔ leak (v), leaking (adj) ➔ διαπόρριφ

For A, B, C, see Vocabulary 1: D.

For B, see Vocabulary 1: B.

For A, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

For A, see Vocabulary 1: C.

For A, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

For A, D, see Vocabulary 1: A.

For B, see Vocabulary 1: C.

For A, B, D, see Vocabulary 1: A.

For B, see Vocabulary 1: F.

For A, D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

For A, D, see Vocabulary 1: B.

For B, C, see 3.01 and 3.02. For D, see Vocabulary 1: D.
C

5.73 **flexible** (adj) – (of things) that can bend easily without breaking • Plastic tubing is easy to work with because it is flexible and therefore bends easily. ➢ flexibility (n), flex (v), flexibly (adv) ➢ εύκαμπτος, εύκαμπτος

5.74 **fragile** (adj) – (of things) delicate, easily damaged or broken • The porcelain vase was so fragile that it shattered into thousands of tiny pieces. ➢ fragility (n) ➢ ευλύγιστος

5.75 **rigid** (adj) – (of things) stiff, unable to bend or change shape • Some forms of plastic are soft and easy to bend while others are rigid and unbending. ➢ rigidity (n), rigidly (adv) ➢ ακαμπτός

5.76 **tough** (adj) – (of things or materials) strong enough to stand up to difficult conditions or rough or careless treatment • Most blue jeans are made of denim, which is a tough, long-lasting material. ➢ toughness (n), toughen (v), toughly (adv) ➢ αδέκτικος. See 3.88 for alternative meaning.

5.77 **versatile** (adj) – (of things or materials) having a number of uses • Word-processing programs are very versatile. They can be used to format text in many ways: from running text in paragraph form to complex charts and tables. ➢ versatility (n) ➢ πολλαπλών χρήσεων και εφαρμογών

D

5.78 **demonstration** (n) – (C) an act of showing sb how to do sth or how sth works • I wasn’t interested in e-book readers until I attended a demonstration and saw for myself how easy to use and practical they are. ➢ demonstrate (v) ➢ πράκτική, πράκτικα

5.79 **display** (n) – 1. (C) a group of things put somewhere for people to see; similar to exhibition, exhibit, and show, but often able to be seen without having to purchase a special ticket • We spent the morning admiring the display of modern sculptures that had been set up in the park. / The famous department store is known for its fabulous window displays. / In the USA, July 4th is famous for its amazing fireworks displays. 2. (C) the part or area of an electronic device that shows/displays information; similar to screen (see 5.05) • Most modern-day phones have displays that show information like time, date, and who is calling. ➢ display (v), displayed (adj) ➢ 1. εξοπλισμός 2. οθόνη

5.80 **exhibition** (n) – (C) a public show or display (e.g., of art, products) • We saw an exciting exhibition of Picasso’s early drawing at the Museum of Modern Art last year. ➢ exhibit (n, v) ➢ εκθέση, εκθέσεις

5.81 **show** (n) – (C) a public performance or exhibition (e.g., a play or other stage performance, a television or radio programme, a museum exhibition, a fashion show); also, any impressive display of sth (e.g., a sound and light show) • She saw two Broadway shows a day on her recent trip to New York. / What’s your favourite show on television? / He never misses a chance to attend the annual week-long car show. / Laser light shows became popular in discos and dance clubs during the late 1960s ➢ show (v), showy (adj) ➢ παράσταση, πρόγραμμα, έκθεση, θέαμα

E

**What’s the difference between engines and motors?**

Insert this question into the ‘search box’ of your favourite Internet search engine and you will probably come up with an explanation that goes something like this: generally speaking, engines use some form of thermal energy (e.g., steam, petrochemical combustion) while motors convert electrical energy into mechanical work. While that sounds like a clear explanation, common usage doesn’t always follow this (or any other) rule! For example, cars have engines (which burn petrol), but they have always been called motor vehicles and the people who drive them are known as motorists (not engineers). We also have engine-driven motorcycles and motor scooters. Similarly confusing is the fact that the outboard motor of a motorboat burns fuel and is therefore a kind of engine, but the boat is still called a motorboat (and not an engineboat). What is fairly clear is that electrical appliances like vacuum cleaners, fans, fridges and air-conditioners are usually equipped with motors (and not engines).

5.82 **apparatus** (n) – (C) a device or (U) equipment needed for a particular activity or purpose • Divers use a breathing apparatus to help them swim for long periods underwater. / The school has recently purchased new apparatus for its chemistry laboratory. ➢ συσκευή, εξοπλισμός

5.83 **engine** (n) – (C) (vehicles) part that produces power to make the vehicle move • If the mechanic finds a problem with your engine, it will cost a lot of money. ➢ μηχανή

5.84 **motor** (n) – (C) (electrical appliances) part that uses power to produce movement or accomplish work • She was kept awake at night by the sound of the fridge’s motor going on and off. ➢ motoring (n), motorist (n) ➢ μηχανή, κινητήρας, μοτέρ

5.85 **machine** (n) – (C) device that has moving parts that is designed to do a particular job • Machines are labour-saving devices. / (in common compound nouns) sewing machine, washing machine, vending machine, answering machine ➢ machinery (n) ➢ μηχανή, μηχανήματα

F

5.86 **glance (at/through)** (v) – have a quick look at sb/ sth or through sth • He glanced at me to see what my reaction was. / She glanced through a magazine while waiting for the doctor. ➢ glance (n) ➢ πίεση μια ματιά

51
5.87 notice (v) – see or become aware of sth; also, pay attention to sb/sth • I noticed that somebody had moved the books on my desk. / I'm so used to the noise of traffic outside my window that I don't even notice it any more. ➢ notice (n), noticeable (adj), noticeably (adv) ❖ βλέπω, προσέχω, παρατηρώ

5.88 observe (v) – watch sb/sth carefully, esp. for scientific or medical purposes; also, watch sth without taking part • The teacher instructed us to observe what happens when he mixed the two chemicals together. / After injuring his leg, he was forced to observe the rest of the game from the sidelines. 2. obey or uphold sth (e.g., laws, rules, customs, religious celebrations) • Good citizens observe the law; Christians observe Christmas on December 25th. ➢ observation (n), observable (adj), observed (adj, adj), observantly (adv) ➢ 1. παρατηρώ, παρακολουθώ, προσέχω 2. τηρώ, υπακούω

5.89 see (v) – 1. perceive with the eyes • Did you see her new hairstyle? / We saw a great film last night. 2. understand • I don't see what he's worried about. 3. meet someone by arrangement or by chance • I’ll see you at home. / Guess who I saw on the train this morning? ➢ sight (n), seen (adj) ➢ 1. βλέπω, κατανάλωσα, παρακολουθώ 3. συναντά

5.90 watch (v) – 1. look at over a period of time • I watched him walk down the street. / We watch TV for two or three hours a day. / I've watched her grow from a baby into a young woman. 2. be careful about sth • She's watching her weight again, so she's eating a lot of salads. / We’re saving to buy a new car, so we’re watching our spending at the moment. ➢ watch (n), watchful (adj), watchfully (adv) ➢ 1. Παρακολουθώ, καταναλώσαμε 3. συναντά

5.91 advanced (adj) – far ahead in development or progress • John has been studying French for six years. He’s in the advanced class this year. / The hospital is proud to have the most advanced medical equipment in the area. ➢ advancement (n), advance (n, v) ➢ προσχηματισμένος, προπόνησες

5.92 potential (adj) – possible, capable of being or becoming in the future • If the new business succeeds, the potential profits could make us all rich. ➢ potential (n), potentially (adv) ➢ πιθανός, ενδεχόμενος

5.93 proficient (in sth) (adj) – able to do or use sth in a skilled or expert way as a result of training and practice • She’s been working in an office for many years, so she’s a proficient computer user. / It takes years of hard work to become proficient in a foreign language. ➢ proficiency (n), proficiently (adv) ➢ ικανός, εμπειρός, γνώστης

5.94 progressive (adj) – favouring change and new ideas • Our school is one of the most progressive in the country as it is always among the first to try out new educational ideas. ➢ progress (n, v), progressiveness (n), progressively (adv) ➢ προοδευτικός

5.95 common (adj) – 1. ordinary, without special characteristics; also, widespread and therefore typical (not special) • Mobile phones are much more common now than they were twenty years ago. How did we ever live without them? 2. common knowledge (phr) – (U) sth that generally known to many people • It’s common knowledge that the USA won its independence from England in 1776. See also 3.19 for alternative meaning. ➢ commonness (n), commonly (adv) ➢ 1. συνήθισμενός, κοινός 2. κοινό μυστικό, γνωστό σε όλους

5.96 general (adj) – 1. not specific or detailed, overall • I read the article quickly to get a general idea of what the writer said. I’ll read it again tonight to get a more detailed understanding of it. 2. normal, usual • As a general rule, I don’t like science fiction films. ➢ generalisation (n), generalise (v), generally ➢ (ένα) γενικός

5.97 ordinary (adj) – usual, normal, not special, odd or different in any way • It was an ordinary day at school. Nothing special happened. ➢ ordinariness (n), ordinarily (adv). ➢ Opp: extraordinary, out of the ordinary ➢ συνήθης, κοινός

5.98 standard (adj) – 1. (of products, objects) following a similar set of guidelines, measurements, sizes, etc. • Doors are usually manufactured in standard sizes, but they can also be custom made to fit a customer’s needs. 2. used or accepted as normal or average • Nowadays, it’s standard procedure at airports to scan passengers’ suitcases before they are loaded onto a plane. ➢ standard (n), standardisation (n), standardise (v) ➢ 1. τυποποιημένος 2. κανονικός, καθιερωμένος

5.99 typical (of sb/sth) (adj) – having the usual characteristics of a particular type of person, thing or group • Is there really such a thing as a typical teenager? / We had lunch at a typical Greek taverna by the sea. / It was typical of him to get the best marks in the class. ➢ type (n), typically (adv). ➢ Opp: untypical, aypical ➢ χαρακτηριστικός

5.100 usual (adj) – 1. normal, ordinary, expected • She had her usual lunch of a pot of yoghurt and a small green salad. 2. as usual (idm) – in the ordinary or expected way • As usual, the manager was the first to arrive and the last to leave. ➢ usualness (n), usually (adv) ➢ 1. συνήθης, συνηθισμένος 2. ως συνήθως

G

5.91 advanced (adj) – far ahead in development or progress • John has been studying French for six years. He’s in the advanced class this year. / The hospital is proud to have the most advanced medical equipment in the area. ➢ advancement (n), advance (n, v) ➢ προσχηματισμένος, προπόνησες

5.92 potential (adj) – possible, capable of being or becoming in the future • If the new business succeeds, the potential profits could make us all rich. ➢ potential (n), potentially (adv) ➢ πιθανός, ενδεχόμενος

5.93 proficient (in sth) (adj) – able to do or use sth in a skilled or expert way as a result of training and practice • She’s been working in an office for many years, so she’s a proficient computer user. / It takes years of hard work to become proficient in a foreign language. ➢ proficiency (n), proficiently (adv) ➢ ικανός, εμπειρός, γνώστης
A

5.101 go off (phr v) – (of alarms or alarm clocks) start working, ring • Everyone in the family was frightened when the burglar alarm in our car went off in the middle of the night. ❖ αρχίζω να ακούω. See 3.115 and 5.55 for alternative meanings.

5.102 look up (phr v) – try to find (information) • If you don’t know what a word or idiom means, you can look it up in a dictionary. ❖ ανατρέχω, ψάχνω να βρω (π.χ. σε λεξικό, εγκυκλοπαίδεια, κλπ.)

5.103 pick out (phr v) – select, choose from a number of things/people • I’ve picked out the perfect wedding gift for my friend. I know she’ll love it. ❖ διαλέγω

5.104 put off (phr v) – affect sb’s attention in a negative way, cause sb to lose focus or concentration • She never listens to music when she is studying as she finds it puts her off. ❖ αποσπώ την προσοχή κάποιου

5.105 send out (phr v) – emit, produce, give out (e.g., a loud noise, light, smoke, signals) • Ambulance sirens send out a terribly loud noise that warns cars to get out of the way. ❖ εμπέμπω, εκβάλλω. See also 1.73 (meaning 1).

5.106 stick to (phr v) – not abandon or give up • if we stick to our original plan, everything will be all right. ❖ δεν εγκαταλείπω

5.107 try out (phr v) – test • If you try out the product and aren’t happy with it, you can return it to the shop. ➤ tryout (n) ❖ δοκιμάζω

5.108 turn down/turn up (phr v) – reduce/increase the intensity or loudness of sth • At his wife’s request, Ed turned down the volume on the match he was watching, but as soon as she left the room, he turned it up again. ❖ χαμηλώνω / δυναμώνω (την ένταση)

5.109 turn off/on (phr v) – (electrical appliances) switch off/on • To turn on the computer, press the start button on the tower. / To save electricity, you should always turn off the lights when you leave a room. ❖ αναίρω, αναίρω / αφήνω, κλείνω (κάτι που έχει διακόπτη)

5.110 wipe off (phr v) – remove by rubbing • If you get water on a wooden table, wipe it off immediately so it doesn’t leave a mark. ❖ αφήνω, τρίβω

---

**Prepositions 2 (page 81)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capable</td>
<td>be capable of sth/doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make use</td>
<td>make use of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keen</td>
<td>be keen on sth/doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>look at sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do research</td>
<td>do research into sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>communicate</td>
<td>communicate with sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plug</td>
<td>plug sth in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevent</td>
<td>prevent sb from doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>by hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seconds</td>
<td>in seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td>by/on a computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have knowledge</td>
<td>have knowledge of sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>explain sth to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sure</td>
<td>for sure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are a few that you might need help with because their meaning is more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

**5.111 plug in** (phr v) – connect sth to an electrical supply (e.g., by putting a plug into a special opening in the wall called a socket or power point) • If you need to recharge the battery in your laptop, you can plug it behind the desk. Can you see the power point?

**5.112 by hand** (prep phr) - with sb’s hand(s) instead of with the aid of a machine • The decoration on the tablecloth was sewn by hand, which is why it is so expensive. Machine-made tablecloths are much cheaper.

---

**Which meaning? (page 86)**

**5.113 go off** (phr v) - 1. (food) go bad • If you don’t put the milk back in the refrigerator, it will go off. 2. leave, go away • After we argued, she slammed the door and went off without a word. 3. (of alarms or alarm clocks) start working, ring • Everyone in the family was frightened when the burglar alarm in our car went off in the middle of the night.

❖ 1. χαλώ, ξινίζω. 2. φεύγω 3. αρχίζω να κτυπώ
The Passive Other Passive Constructions

Vocabulary 1 (pages 90-91)

A (page 90)
6.01 announcer (n) – sb on TV or radio who reads the news or introduces people, acts, etc • The announcer's voice sounded very serious as he talked about the explosion that had just taken place in the city. ➢ announce (v), announcement (n) ❖ εκφωνητής (ειδήσεων)

6.02 commentator (n) – reporter or other person who comments on events • The news commentator was on TV throughout the day providing updates on the election results. ➢ comment (n, v), commentary (n) ❖ εκφωνητής συντάκτης

6.03 correspondent (n) – journalist who reports from a certain location or specialises in a certain type of news • The famous war correspondent was killed in a bombing raid during the Gulf War. ➢ correspond (v), correspondence (n) ❖ ανταποκριτής

6.04 editor (n) – a person whose job is to decide what will be published in a newspaper, magazine, etc • I spoke to the editor and he promised to publish my article. ➢ edit (v), editorial (n, adj) ❖ συντάκτης, επιμελητής έκδοσης

6.05 guest (n) – (sometimes famous) person who is invited to take part in a performance or show • The talk show features guests from show business and politics. ❖ φιλοξενούμενη εκπομπής

6.06 newsagent (n) – person who sells magazines and newspapers in a shop • The newsagent I go to always makes sure that he keeps the last English newspaper for me. ➢ newsagent's (n) ❖ πράκτορας εφημερίδων

6.07 presenter (n) – sb who presents a television or radio show • The show's presenter introduced his next guest. ➢ present (v) ❖ παρουσιαστής

6.08 viewer (n) – sb who watches sth (e.g., TV or a movie) • 'And for all our viewers at home, we have a special offer for the first 100 callers.' ➢ view (n, v) ❖ θεατής (τηλεοπτικής εκπομπής)

B (page 90)
6.09 article (n) – a piece of writing in a magazine or newspaper that is not fiction but based on fact • Did you read that article about the improvement in the economy in the newspaper today? ➢ άρθρο

6.10 angle (n) – point of view • If you look at the situation from another angle, you might realise that things are not so bad. ➢ angle (v) ❖ πρίσμα, άποψη, γωνία

6.11 attitude (n) – the way one thinks and feels about sth • Our attitudes about life usually change as we grow older. / (U) The boss thinks you're too negative. He'd like to see a change of attitude. ➢ στάση

6.12 column (n) – a piece of writing by a particular writer or about a particular theme that regularly appears in a newspaper or magazine • She writes a fashion column in the Times every Monday. ➢ columnist (n) ❖ στήλη

6.13 guide (n) – a magazine/book that gives information • We'd never been there before and we didn't have a travel guide, so we didn't know where to go. ➢ guide (v), guidance (n) ❖ οδηγός (έντυπο)

6.14 opinion (n) – point of view • What's your opinion about the human rights of prisoners? ➢ opinionated (adj) ❖ γνώμη, γνώμονα

6.15 review (n) – article in a newspaper or magazine expressing sb’s opinion of a play, film, book, etc • As a film critic, he writes several film reviews a month for the local newspaper. ➢ review (v), reviewer (n) ❖ κριτική

C (page 90)
6.16 caption (n) – words under a photo or picture giving further information about it • I didn't know where the photo had been taken until I read the caption. ➢ τίτλος

6.17 censorship (n) – the practice of examining books, films, newspapers, etc, and removing sth thought to be offensive, harmful or dangerous • Some people believe that strict censorship of the media is essential in wartime. ➢ censor (n, v), censored (adj) ❖ λογοκρισία

6.18 deadline (n) – date or time by which sth must be done • You'd better finish that application and put it in the post tonight. The deadline for submitting it is in three days. ➢ προθεσμία

6.19 headline (n) – the heading printed in large letters above a newspaper article • I haven't read the newspaper properly yet. I just had time to read the headlines. ➢ επικεφαλίδα

55
6.20 leaflet (n) – a piece of printed paper containing information or advertising sth • They stood outside the school giving out leaflets on Internet crime.
❖ φυλλάδιο

6.21 slogan (n) – short, easily remembered phrase used in advertising or political campaigns • 'Just Do It' is a well-known advertising slogan.
❖ ανάγκασα, ανάγκησα

6.22 circulate (v) – move or be moved easily and freely within a closed system or place; pass or be passed from one place to another or one person to another • blood circulates in the bloodstream, an air-conditioner circulates cool air within a room, rumours circulate around an office, a group of protestors circulate leaflets in a crowd ➢ circulation (n) ❖ κυκλοφόρηση

6.23 distribute (v) – give or pass sth out to a number of people • To earn extra money, the teenagers distributed supermarket advertising leaflets in their neighbourhood. ➢ distribution (n), distributor (n) ❖ διανέμω, μοιράζω

6.24 print (v) – to make many copies of a book, newspaper or magazine by using a special machine that puts ink onto paper • Newspapers were printed in the middle of the night, so that they are ready to be sold in shops early in the morning. ➢ print (n), printer (n) ❖ τυπώνω

6.25 publicise (v) – bring sth to the public's attention (e.g., through advertising and media coverage) • We publicised the school play by putting posters all over town. ➢ public (n, adj), publicity (n), publicly (adv) ❖ δημοσιεύω, εκφωνητής, εκφωνητής

6.26 publish (v) – make available to the public in printed form • The company plans to publish 20 new books next year. ➢ publication (n), publishing (n, adj), publisher (n), published (adj) ❖ κυκλοφόρηση, δημοσιογράφος

6.27 sponsor (v) – provide financial support for sth • Companies like Coca Cola and Nike regularly sponsor major sporting events in return for the right to advertise. ➢ sponsor (n), sponsored (adj), sponsoring (adj) ❖ χρηματοδοτώ, χρηματοδοτώ

6.28 conference (n) – a formal meeting that often lasts for several days where people who have a common interest can discuss things • She’s speaking at a business conference next week.
❖ συνεδρίαση, συνεδρίο

6.29 copy (n) – one of many books/magazines/newspapers that are all the same • If you go to the newagent’s, please buy me a copy of the Daily News. ➢ copy (v) ❖ αντίτυπο

6.30 edition (n) – one version of a particular book, magazine, etc • A new edition of our dictionary is now available at bookshops. ❖ edit (v), editor (n), editorial (n, adj) ❖ εκδόση

6.31 journalist (n) – sb who writes about the news for newspapers, magazines, etc • The journalist quickly emailed her report to the editor of the newspaper just in time for it to be included in the following day’s paper. ➢ journalism (n), journalistic (adj) ❖ δημοσιογράφος

6.32 newscaster (n) – sb who reads the news on TV or radio • Once the newscaster had finished reading the news, someone else presented the weather forecast. ➢ newscast (n) ❖ εκφωνητής επιστροφής

6.33 producer (n) – sb who is in general control of the preparation of a film, play, etc • Sometimes actors decide to become producers. ➢ produce (v), production (n) ❖ παραγωγός

6.34 supplement (n) – an extra section that is added to and sold with a newspaper or magazine • Newspapers usually have lots of supplements at the weekend. ❖ παράρτημα

6.35 comment (v) – express (e.g., an opinion or reaction), say what one thinks about sth • The politician refused to comment when he was asked about his role in the scandal. ➢ comment (n), commentator (n), commentary (n) ❖ σχολιάζω

6.36 mention (v) – refer to sth in a few words, without going into detail • Tom mentioned to me that he had been ill, but he didn’t go into detail. ➢ mention (n) ❖ αναφέρομαι

6.37 note (down) (v) – write sth down to remember it or use it later • He noted down Penny’s telephone number before he left in case he couldn’t find her house. ➢ note (n) ❖ κρατάω σημειώσεις, σημειώνω

6.38 refer (to sth) (v) – speak about or mention sth • The first part of the book refers to his childhood. ➢ reference (n) ❖ αναφέρομαι, αναφέρομαι

6.39 run (the story) (v) – print a story/article/report in a newspaper or magazine • The journalist was disappointed when it was decided not to run the story. ❖ τρέχω «μια ιστορία, ένα θέμα

6.40 detail (n) – one fact (or piece of information) about sth or many single facts considered together • You must pay attention to detail if you want to describe what happened accurately. ➢ detail (v), detailed (adj) ❖ διατάξεως

6.41 publicity (n) – information or activity (esp. in the media) that is designed to attract public attention
The new movie has received a tremendous amount of publicity on TV and radio and in the local newspapers.

**Public (n, adj), publicise (v), publicly (adv)**

**δημοσιότητα, διαφήμιση**

**Rumour (n)** – generally circulated story or news that may or may not be true.

- Harvey didn't break up with Leah; in fact, they just got engaged!

**Service (n)** – the operation of an organisation doing a useful job or supplying a need.

- There is a very good postal service in the UK: letters arrive the next day, the postman delivers parcels to your door and very little post goes missing.

**Source (n)** – a person or book that provides information for an article, news story, etc.

- That website is a very useful source of information.

**Allowance (n)** – amount of money given to sb regularly for a particular purpose.

- He was given a housing allowance because he couldn't cover the cost of his rent.

**Pass (n)** – piece of paper allowing you to enter a building, public transport, etc without paying.

- After the rock concert, they went to meet the band because they had a backstage pass.

**Permission (n)** – the act of allowing sb to do sth.

- He had to stay home as his parents wouldn't give him permission to go to the party.

**Permit (n)** – official document that gives one permission to do sth.

- You need a permit to import and export goods.

**Process (n)** – a set of actions that are done to achieve something.

- We learnt a lot about the production process when we visited the chocolate factory.

**Phrasal Verbs 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring about</td>
<td>cause sth to happen</td>
<td>It is hoped that lower bank rates will bring about an upswing in economic activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be called away</td>
<td>asked to leave for work reasons</td>
<td>The doctor is often called away on emergencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call for</td>
<td>require</td>
<td>You've got the job! That calls for a celebration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch up with</td>
<td>draw level with</td>
<td>I haven't watched that TV series for a long time, so it will take me a while to catch up with what's been happening in the story.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check up on sth</td>
<td>investigate, see if sth is correct</td>
<td>The suspect had better be telling the truth because the police are bound to check up on his story.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop off</td>
<td>fall asleep</td>
<td>He dropped off while he was watching TV and started to snore loudly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall back on</td>
<td>turn to for help, rely on for support</td>
<td>If his friends can't lend him the money, he knows he can always fall back on his father.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall in with</td>
<td>agree to sth with sb, especially after hesitating or being persuaded</td>
<td>He's usually hard to convince, but this time he fell in with the idea almost immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get round</td>
<td>overcome (a problem)</td>
<td>Don't worry about your problem; we'll get round it somehow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make up</td>
<td>create something that is not true</td>
<td>She made up an excuse about being ill and left the office.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You are probably familiar with many of the phrases in the chart. Following are some of the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be important</td>
<td>be important to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be easy</td>
<td>be easy for sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get an interview</td>
<td>get an interview with sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliver</td>
<td>deliver sth to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mention</td>
<td>no mention of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper</td>
<td>in the paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television</td>
<td>on television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>in the news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be mistaken</td>
<td>be mistaken for sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give rise</td>
<td>give rise to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen</td>
<td>listen to sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appeal</td>
<td>appeal to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>type of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be played</td>
<td>be played on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page</td>
<td>on page 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invasion</td>
<td>invasion of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cope</td>
<td>cope with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be a target</td>
<td>be a target for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take pride</td>
<td>take pride in sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quality</td>
<td>quality of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>achieved</td>
<td>achieved by sb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.61 **no mention of** (expr) – no comment about, nothing written/said about • There was no mention of a pay rise at the meeting, so I suppose there won’t be one. ➞ mention (v, n) • ουδεμία αναφορά

6.62 **mistake for** (phr v) – think that sb is sb else • Sorry, I mistook you for my sister’s friend. You look just like her. ➞ mistake (v, n), mistaken (adj) • περνώ κάποιον για κάποιον άλλο, εκλαμβάνω ως

6.63 **give rise to** (phr v) – cause, lead to, bring about • His refusal to compromise will sooner or later give rise to the break-up of their marriage. • προκαλώ, δημιουργώ

6.64 **appeal (to)** (v) – attract or interest sb • The novel appeals to him because it portrays his home town at the turn of the 20th century. • συγκινώ, προσελκύω το ενδιαφέρον

6.65 **invasion of privacy** (idm) – the act of sb/sth entering your personal space in an intrusive way • Entering my room without knocking first is an invasion of my privacy. • εισβολή στον προσωπικό μου χώρο, εισβολή στην ιδιωτική μου ζωή

6.66 **cope with** (phr v) – deal with something successfully • I just can’t cope with this work! Will you help me? • τα καταφέρνω, ανταπεξέρχομαι

6.67 **take pride in** (v phr) – be proud of (sb/sth), feel pleased about sb’s successes or achievements • It’s natural for the award-winning writer to take pride in the books he’s written. • καμαρώνω
Items 1-12

Most of the choices that accompany this passage have already appeared in previous sections. If you need help with them, review the sections referred to below.

1 A For B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: C.

6.68 title (n) – name given to a story, book, play, etc
- The title of the book is ‘Great Expectations’ and it’s by Charles Dickens.

2 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: B.

3 For B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: E.

4 D For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: A.

6.69 host (n) – person on a show who introduces the other performers
- ‘Your host for the night is Jay Leno.’

5 For D, see Prepositions 1.

6 C For A, B and D, see Vocabulary 1: G.

6.70 profession (n) – form of job, often requiring a high level of education or qualification
- Ella is hoping to enter the medical profession.

7 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: H.

8 D For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: C.

6.71 origin (n) – (often pl) the beginning, cause or source of sth
- Democracy has its origins in ancient Greece.

9 For A, B, C and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

6.72 misunderstand (v) – understand wrongly
- I misunderstood you; I thought you meant he was boring, not that he was bored.

10 For A, B, C and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

11 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: A and D.

12 A For B and C, see Vocabulary 1: C and H. For D, see Prepositions 1.

6.73 include (v) – have sth / sb as part of a whole
- The price includes postage and handling.

6.74 inform (v) – give sb facts or information
- The doctor will inform you about the results of your examination within 24 hours.

6.75 instruct (v) – tell somebody to do something, especially with authority or as an order
- The boss instructed everyone to be on time.

6.76 interpret (v) – understand the meaning of sth
- I interpreted her silence as confirmation that she didn’t want to come with me.

6.77 involve (v) – contain or have (sth) as a necessary part
- The job involves a lot of travelling and overtime, so he has decided not to accept it.

6.78 mean (v) – to result in sth
- Losing his job meant that he couldn’t pay his rent.

Vocabulary 2 (page 96)

A (page 96)

6.73 include (v) – have sth / sb as part of a whole
- The price includes postage and handling.

6.74 inform (v) – give sb facts or information
- The doctor will inform you about the results of your examination within 24 hours.

6.75 instruct (v) – tell somebody to do something, especially with authority or as an order
- The boss instructed everyone to be on time.

6.76 interpret (v) – understand the meaning of sth
- I interpreted her silence as confirmation that she didn’t want to come with me.

6.77 involve (v) – contain or have (sth) as a necessary part
- The job involves a lot of travelling and overtime, so he has decided not to accept it.

6.78 mean (v) – to result in sth
- Losing his job meant that he couldn’t pay his rent.

B (page 96)

6.79 complete (adj) – total, in every way
- The party was a complete failure. The food and music were awful and no one enjoyed themselves.

6.80 great (adj) – very large in degree or amount
- She felt a great sense of relief when she passed her exams.

6.81 full (adj) – total, complete
- Please write your full address on the form, including your postcode.

6.82 thorough (adj) – complete, including every detail
- The doctor gave me a thorough check-up and found nothing wrong! / If you want someone to check the report for errors, ask John. He’s very thorough.

6.83 whole (adj) – complete, total
- I can’t take you the whole way home, but I can take you as far as the bus stop.
C (page 96)
6.84 box (n) – small enclosed area with seats separate from the main seating area in a theatre, courtroom or sports stadium • When Prince Charles goes to the theatre, he always sits in the Royal Box. ❖ θεατήριο
6.85 house (n) – company (usually concerning publishing and fashion) • The publishing house was well known for publishing successful educational books. ❖ εκδοτικός οίκος, οίκος μόδας
6.86 dark room (n) – room with no light where photographs are developed • The photographer went into the dark room to develop his latest photographs. ❖ «σκοτεινό δωμάτιο» (για φωτογράφους)

D (page 96)
6.87 audience (n) – group of people who watch or listen to a performance • The people in the audience went quiet as soon as the curtain began to go up. ❖ κοινό ακροατήριο
6.88 crew (n) – team of people working together (on a film, boat, plane, etc) • The film crew were getting annoyed because the actress couldn’t remember her lines. / Thanks to the quick-thinking captain and his crew, all of the passengers left the sinking ship unharmed. ❖ πλήρωμα, πλοίου (συνεργείο), πλοίου (συνεργείο)
6.89 listener (n) – person who listens to the radio • A listener from Bradford called in to the radio show to ask the guest a question. ➤ listen (v) ❖ ακοατήριο
6.90 member (n) – sb who has joined a particular group, club or organisation • He was a member of the yacht club, so he was allowed to eat in the members’ restaurant. ❖ μέλος
6.91 passer-by (n) – sb who just happens to be walking past sb/sth often when sth occurs • From what police are saying, at least one innocent passer-by was killed in the explosion. ❖ διαβάτης, περαστικός. Note: the plural form is passers-by
6.92 viewer (n) – sb who watches sth (e.g., TV or a movie) • ‘And for all our viewers at home, we have a special offer for the first 100 callers.’ ➤ view (n, v) ❖ θεατής (τηλεοπτικής εκπομπής)

E (page 96)
6.93 direct (adv) – without dealing with anyone else • I bought these books direct from the publisher, not from a bookshop. ➤ directly (adv) ❖ κατευθείαν, απευθείας
6.94 immediate (adj) – that must happen or be taken care of quickly or instantly, urgent • The situation was serious and required their immediate attention. ➤ immediacy (n), immediately (adv) ❖ κατεύθεια
6.95 instant (adj) – immediate, happening or produced immediately • I took an instant dislike to my brother’s new girlfriend. ➤ instantly (adv), instant (n) ❖ σιγουρά, σκληρά

F (page 97)
6.98 earlier (adj) – happening before on the same day • The dentist is busy at 1pm. Would you like an earlier appointment? ➤ early (adj) ❖ νωρίτερος
6.99 former (adj) – previous, past, of or at an earlier time • To apply for the job, you must submit two reference letters from your former employers. ➤ formerly (adv) ❖ πρόηγου, προηγούμενος
6.100 past (adj) – previous, before now • Her past experience in nursing helped her in her new job as a carer for an old lady. ❖ παλιότερος, παρελθοντικός
6.101 permanent (adj) – lasting forever or for a very long time • The scar on his face was a permanent reminder of the terrible accident. ➤ permanency (n), permanently (adj). ➤ Opp: impermanent, temporary ❖ μόνιμος
6.102 previous (adj) – earlier in time or order, past, prior • He found the writer’s previous book much more exciting than the one that was just published. ➤ previously (adv) ❖ προηγούμενος
6.103 temporary (adj) – lasting for a short time, not permanent • The temporary typist proved to be so efficient that she was offered a full-time job when her month-long assignment was up. ➤ temporariness (n), temporarily (adv) ❖ προσωρινός

G (page 97)
6.104 agenda (n) – list of subjects to be talked about at a meeting • The last item on the agenda today is the problem we have been having with air-conditioning in the office. ❖ ημερολόγιο, ημεροδείκτης
6.105 diary (n) – a book in which sb writes every day about what is happening in their life • She hid her diary under her pillow because she didn’t want anyone to read it. ❖ ημερολόγιο
6.106 calendar (n) – 1. a printed table showing the days, weeks and months of the year • I looked at the calendar to see if the 2nd of February was a Monday. 2. list of dates in the year when events are held that are important to certain organisations’ groups • The Prime Minister’s visit to France is the next important date on the political calendar. ➤ 1. ημερολόγιο, ημεροδείκτης
6.107 forecast (n) – statement of future events based on given information • According to the weather forecast, it’s going to be sunny tomorrow. ➤ forecast (v) ❖ πρόγνωση, προβλέψη
6.108 memo (n) – note from one person to another within the same company • I found a memo on my desk from the finance director about a meeting later that day. υπόμνημα, σημείωμα

6.109 commercial break (n) – period of time between or during TV programmes when the advertisements are shown • I fell asleep during the commercial break and missed the rest of the comedy show. διαφημιστικό διάλλειμα

6.110 episode (n) – TV or radio programme that is one of a series of programmes telling one story • Did you see yesterday’s episode of ‘The Young and the Restless’? επεισόδιο

6.111 feature (n) – piece of writing about a particular subject in a newspaper • She’s writing a feature on the Dalai Lama for the Sunday Times. feature (v) note (v)

6.112 section (n) – one part of something • He buys a newspaper every day but he only reads the sports section. τμήμα, κομμάτι, μέρος

6.113 serial (n) – a story on television or radio or in a magazine or a newspaper that is broken into a number of parts over a period of time • Marion’s first novel was made into a television serial. σίριαλ, σειρά συνεχείας

6.114 series (n) – a set of TV programmes in which each one deals with the same subject or story • There’s a new detective series on TV. It’s on every Monday night at 9pm. τηλεοπτική σειρά

6.115 get (sth) down (phr v) – write sth quickly • The reporter got down every word the Prime Minister said. σημειώνω, καταγράφω

6.116 get out of (phr v) – avoid • He got out of taking the test by pretending to be sick. αποφεύγω

6.117 keep at (sth) (phr v) – not give up • Don’t worry about failing your English exam. Keep at it and you’ll soon improve. εμμένω σε κάτι, δεν τα παρατώ

6.118 leave out (phr v) – not include • Tell me all about your holiday. Don’t leave anything out. παραλείπω

6.119 let through (phr v) – allow to pass • The security guards outside the nightclub would only let the celebrities through the door. επιτρέπω την είσοδο, αφήνω κάποιον να περάσει

6.120 pull (it) off (phr v) – succeed in a difficult situation • It’s difficult to become a successful actor, but he pulled it off. τα καταφέρνω να περάσω

6.121 run off (phr v) – make copies on a machine (e.g., a photocopier or printing press) • Could you run off five copies of the meeting agenda, please? τυπώνω, βγάζω φωτοαντίγραφα

6.122 set out (to do sth) (phr v) – begin to do sth with a specific goal in mind • The sailing team had set out to win a medal in the Olympics, and after months of hard training, that’s exactly what they did. ξεκινώ. Note: The verb set is irregular: set – set – set.

6.123 stand in for (sth/sb) (phr v) – take the place of, substitute for • Our English teacher was sick today so another teacher had to stand in for her. αντικαθιστώ κπ

6.124 turn into (phr v) – become • Our camping trip turned into a nightmare when Jane got lost in the woods. μετατρέπω-ομαι
### Prepositions 2 (page 98)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be excited</td>
<td>be excited about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be ashamed</td>
<td>be ashamed of (oneself) for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get angry</td>
<td>get angry with sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purpose</td>
<td>on purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no point</td>
<td>no point in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover</td>
<td>on the cover of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be proud</td>
<td>be proud of sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>describe</td>
<td>describe sth as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
<td>decide on sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>date of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coverage</td>
<td>coverage of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hour</td>
<td>in an one hour</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.125 **excited (about)** (adj) – looking forward to, enthusiastic • *Barbara was so excited about her new computer game that she couldn’t talk about anything else.* ⇒ excite (v), exciting (adj), excitement (n) ✤ ενθουσιασμένος

6.126 **ashamed (of oneself)** (adj) – feel embarrassed or guilty about sth one has done • *The girl felt ashamed of herself for having lied to her father.* ⇒ shame (n) ✤ που ντρέπεται για κάτι

6.127 **on purpose** (phr) – deliberately, intentionally

- *Some soldiers in the war hurt their own hand or leg on purpose so that they wouldn’t have to fight and could be sent home.* ✤ επίτηδες, σκόπιμα

6.128 **there’s no point (in)** (phr) – it is a waste of time
- *There’s no point in complaining; we should try to solve the problem.* ✤ είναι άσκοπο, δεν έχει νόημα

6.129 **coverage (of)** (n) – way in which an event or subject is reported on TV, radio or in the newspapers
- *The BBC provided good coverage of the royal wedding.* ⇒ cover (v) ✤ (δημοσιογραφική) κάλυψη
7 Making Comparisons
Relative Clauses

Vocabulary 1 (page 112)
A (page 112)
7.01 enter your head (idm) – come into/cross sb’s mind • The police suspect John? The possibility never even entered my head. μου έρχεται στο νου
7.02 lose your head (idm) – panic, lose control of your emotions • When he saw blood on his friend’s face, he lost his head and started shouting instead of going for help. ⇒ Opp: use one’s head, stay calm θαύμω την ψυχραιμία μου
7.03 judgement (n) – opinion • I didn’t trust his judgement, so I asked my sister to decide which dress I should wear instead. ⇒ judge (v, n), judgemental (adj)
7.04 to my mind (prep phr) – in my view/opinion • The critics hated the director’s last film, but to my mind it’s one of his best.
7.05 be in two minds (idm) – have conflicting feelings about sth • I was in two minds about going to the party. I knew it would be fun but I had an exam two days later. διστάζω, αμφιθαλαντεύομαι, δεν μπορώ να αποφασίσω
7.06 opinion (n) – a belief or judgment about sth; what sb thinks • Don’t be so quick to form an opinion about her until you hear all the facts. ⇒ opinionated (adj) γνώμης, άποψη
7.07 second thoughts (idm) – reservations, misgivings • After living abroad for several years, she began to have second thoughts about living so far away from her family and decided it was time to move closer to home. σφιχτέρα σκέψη

B (page 112)
7.08 audition (n) – short performance given by sb (e.g., an actor, singer or musician) to see if one is suitable for a specific role or job • The audition went well and he was given the leading role in the school play. δοκιμαστική ακρόαση
7.09 cast (n) – the people who are in a play or a film • It’s a very good film and has a brilliant cast. ⇒ cast (v), casting (n) θεάτρου
7.10 special effects (pl n) – unusual images or sounds in a film or TV programme • The special effects were a bit disappointing but on the whole, I enjoyed the film. ειδικά έφε
7.11 rehearsal (n) – practice for a performance (of a play, concert, etc.) • After two months of rehearsal, the actors felt they were ready for the play’s opening performance. ⇒ rehearse (v) πρόβα
7.12 role (n) – part in a film or a play • Who plays the leading role in the film? рόλος
7.13 script (n) – written-down words (eg, of a play or film) • The actor accepted the part in the play without reading the entire script. σενάριο

C (page 112)
7.14 dialogue (n) – a conversation in a book, play or film • There wasn’t much dialogue in the film; it was an action film.
7.15 plot (n) – the storyline of a play, film or book • The dialogues in the film were very funny but the plot was hard to follow.
7.16 scene (n) – a part of a play, a film or a book that happens in the same place • The film was full of action scenes.
7.17 screen (n) – the surface of a TV or computer monitor, or where a film is shown in the cinema; it also means cinema or television in general • We sat right at the back of the cinema, far away from the screen. / Everyone agrees that the actor looked taller on screen than he does in person.
7.18 stage (n) – area of a theatre where a performance takes place; also, any raised platform (e.g., in a hall or auditorium) where speeches are made or ceremonies or performances take place • Everyone applauded as the actors came onto the stage to take their final bow.

D (page 112)
7.19 aim (n) – the reason why something is done • Our main aim is to raise money for the poor and homeless.
7.20 goal (n) – aim, something you want to achieve • Our goal is to save enough money to travel abroad this summer.
7.21 in the hope of (prep phr) – hoping to, with the aim or intention of (doing sth) • He has been calling all the travel agencies in the area in the hope of finding cheaper tickets. ▷ με την ελπίδα ότι
7.22 target (n) – a person or thing that other people criticise, attack, take advantage of or laugh at, etc • Teenagers are easy targets for advertisers. ▷ target (v) ▶ στόχος
7.23 with a view to (doing sth) (prep phr) – with the intention of (doing sth) • The Smiths are calling all the travel agencies in the area in the hope of finding cheaper tickets. ▷ με σκοπό

Similar but different: aim and goal mean almost the same thing, but you can say ‘reach a goal’. You cannot use the word reach with aim.

E (page 113)
7.24 agency (n) – a business that provides a service • He works for an advertising agency. ▷ agent (n) ▶ γραφείο, πρακτορείο
7.25 gallery (n) – room or building where works of art (paintings, statues, etc) are shown and sometimes sold • The Tate is a famous art gallery in London where you can see paintings by Picasso and Monet. ▶ πινακοθήκη, γκαλερί
7.26 box office (n phr) – (C) small office from which cinema, theatre, or concert tickets are sold • When we arrived at the theatre, a sign at the box office said the performance was sold out. ▶ ταμείο (ανεμά, θεάτρου κτλ)
7.27 section (n) – part of sth • I like reading the sports section of a newspaper. ▶ τμήμα, τομέας
7.28 society (n) – organisation or club of people with similar aims or interests • She and her friends are active members of the local environmental society. ▶ οργάνωση
7.29 subtitle (n) – words at the bottom of a TV/cinema screen to translate a foreign film/programme, etc • Don’t worry; I know it’s a French film but there are subtitles, so we’ll be able to understand it. ▷ subtitled (adj) ▶ υπότιτλος

F (page 113)
7.30 appearance (n) – an act of appearing in public as a performer or in a court of law • The actor makes frequent appearances on TV talk shows. ▷ appear (v) ▶ εμφάνιση
7.31 award (n) – prize given in honour of an achievement • The actor has received many awards for his outstanding work. ▷ award (v) ▶ βραβείο
7.32 exhibition (n) – public show or display (e.g., of art, products) • The modern art exhibition was very successful. There were paintings from all round the world. ▷ exhibit (v, n) ▶ έκθεση, επιδείξη

G (page 113)
7.33 festival (n) – group of theatrical/musical/film performances held regularly in a particular place • The Cannes Film Festival is a yearly event where international films are shown for the first time and are judged. ▶ φεστιβάλ, αναδεικνύονται πιο συχνά και στα διάφορα κώμα
7.34 performance (n) – the act of singing, acting, or dancing, etc in front of an audience • Her performance in the play was excellent; she is a very good actress. ▷ perform (v), performer (n) ▶ παράσταση
7.35 queue (n) – a line of people waiting for sth • We stood in the queue for over three hours trying to get tickets for the championship tennis match. ▷ queue (v) ▶ ουρά

H (page 113)
7.42 be located (v) – exist in a particular place • The university is located a few kilometres outside the city. ▷ locate (v), location (n) ▶ είμαι, βρίσκομαι κάπου
7.43 realise (v) – make sth happen or become a reality (e.g., dreams, ambitions, plans) • After years of hard work, he finally realised his ambition of becoming a doctor. ▶ πραγματοποιεί
7.44 **recognise** (v) – 1. identify sb/sth as a result of having seen or heard about them before
   • “You look great! You’ve lost so much weight that I almost didn’t recognise you!”

   2. accept or acknowledge that sth exists or is true
   • He recognises the fact that his brother is a better athlete than he is.
   ➢ recognition (n), recognisable (adj), recognisably (adv)

7.45 **spot** (v) – observe, notice

   ➢ Professional basketball players are so tall that they’re easy to spot in a crowd.

    διακρίνω, ξεχωρίζω

7.46 **understand** (v) – have been told, have found out that

   ➢ I understand that you used to live in Singapore.

    αντιλαμβάνομαι, καταλαβαίνω

### Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 114)

7.47 **come on** (phr v) – (of performer, musicians, actors, etc) appear

   • Everyone got bored waiting for the main band to come on.

    εμφανίζομαι

7.48 **come off** (phr v) – succeed, happen

   • I didn’t think our plan for the surprise party would come off, but it did; he didn’t suspect a thing!

    πετυχαίνω, πραγματοποιούμαι

7.49 **cut in** (phr v) – interrupt (sb talking)

   • Sorry to cut in while you are talking, but you have an urgent telephone call.

    διακόπτω

7.50 **cut out** (phr v) – naturally suited or made for sth

   • If you’re not a patient person, then you’re not cut out for teaching.

    είμαι πλασμένος για (va)

7.51 **fall through** (phr v) – (of plans) collapse, fail to happen as expected

   • Her vacation plans may fall through due to an unexpected airline strike.

    αποτυγχάνω

7.52 **get round** (phr v) – become known

   • When it gets round that he’s leaving, everyone will be upset.

    γνωστοποιούμαι

7.53 **go through** (phr v) – examine

   • After going through more than 100 applications, we narrowed the field down to the 5 best candidates.

    εξετάζω

7.54 **hang back** (phr v) – hesitate

   • Don’t hang back! Help yourself to some food.

    διστάζω

7.55 **let in** (phr v) – allow to enter

   • If the doorbell rings, don’t let anyone in without checking who it is first.

    είμαι να μπει

7.56 **live on** (phr v) – use to survive

   • He lives on a small pension.

    ζω (με)

### Prepositions 1 (page 114)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>surprise</td>
<td>to my surprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td>wait for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>by far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be divided</td>
<td>be divided into sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ease</td>
<td>at ease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stage</td>
<td>on stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>on location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jealous</td>
<td>jealous of sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sight</td>
<td>by sight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dream of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the last minute</td>
<td>at the last minute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.57 to my surprise (idm) – surprisingly (I did not expect this to happen) ➢ To my surprise, I won the competition. ➢ surprise (v), surprising (adj), surprisingly (adv) ➢ έκπληξη
7.58 by far (idm) – by a great deal or amount ➢ She is by far the best actress in the film. ➢ κατά παράλληλα, αυτοπροσωπικά
7.59 divide into (n phr) – separate into two or more parts ➢ Let’s divide the class into six groups. ➢ Let’s divide the cake into ten big slices. ➢ division (n), divider (n) ➢ χωρίζω (ας)
7.60 be at ease (idm) – feel comfortable and relaxed ➢ The students were so warm and friendly to their new teacher that she immediately felt at ease. ➢ νιώθω άνετα

Use of English Practice 1 (page 115)

Items 1-12
1 For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: H.
2 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: D.
3 B, D For A and C, see Vocabulary 1: B.
4 D For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: E.
5 For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: B.
6 For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: B.
7 For A, B and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1. For C, see Phrasal Verbs 2, Unit 6.
8 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: C.
9 For A, B and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1. For C, see Phrasal Verbs 1, Unit 5.
10 D For C, see Vocabulary 1: A.
11 A, D For B and C, see Vocabulary 1: F.
12 B For A, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: A.

7.61 on location (phr) – place away from a film studio where scenes are made for a film ➢ The film was shot on location in India. ➢ σε τοποθεσία
7.62 jealous (of) (adj) – wanting what others have ➢ He was jealous of his brother’s success, and the emotion poisoned their relationship. ➢ jealousy (n), jealously (adv) ➢ ζηλιάρης
7.63 know sb by sight (idm) – recognise sb when you see them although you have never met or talked to them ➢ She had never been introduced to the managing director, but she knew him by sight. ➢ γνωρίζω και εξ ανακοίνωση
7.64 dream (of) – imagine either when you are asleep or awake ➢ I used to look in the mirror and dream of being a famous ballet dancer. ➢ dream (n), dreamy (adj) ➢ ονειρεύομαι, ονείροπολω
7.65 at the last minute (idm) – just before it’s too late ➢ I thought my sister would miss the film, but she arrived at the last minute. ➢ την τελευταία στιγμή

7.66 trial (n) – formal examination of evidence in a court of law ➢ The trial will take place in two months, which gives the lawyers plenty of time to prepare their cases. ➢ The suspect was arrested and put on trial for murder. ➢ try (v) ➢ δίκη
7.67 experiment (n) – a test, especially a scientific one, carried out in order to discover whether a theory is correct or what the results of a particular course of action would be; any attempt to do something new or to see what will happen ➢ Our science teacher had us do an interesting experiment to show how crystals are created. ➢ The boss has agreed to let some of us work at home once a week as an experiment. ➢ experimentation (n), experiment (v), experimental (adj), experimentally (adv) ➢ εξερευνώ

7.68 department (n) – part of a company, organisation, store, university, etc. ➢ Greg works in the sales department and his friend Marina works in the personnel department. ➢ departmental (adj) ➢ τμήμα (π.χ. επιχείρηση)

7.69 vision (n) – powerful image or picture seen in the mind ➢ a scientist/politician’s vision of the future ➢ visual (adj), envisage (v) ➢ οράμα
7.70 prize (n) – sth that you get when you win or are successful ➢ I won a prize at school for coming top of my year in French. ➢ βραβείο
7.71 ceremony (n) – formal occasion celebrating a special event or anniversary ➢ The wedding ceremony will take place on a beach rather than in a church. ➢ ceremonial (adj), ceremonially (adv) ➢ τελετή
7.72 reason (n) – explanation for or cause of sth (e.g., an event or an action) ➢ There are several reasons why her parents prefer her to go to a college close to home; expense is the primary one. ➢ reason (v), reasonable (adj), reasonably (adv) ➢ όμοιος
Vocabulary 2 (page 118)

A (page 118)

7.73 **best-seller** (n) – very successful book • The book’s a best-seller so it must be good. ⇒ best-selling (adj) • μπεστ-ευηπώλητο, ευηπώλητο βιβλίο

7.74 **fiction** (n) – type of literature that deals with imagined events and characters (e.g., novels, short stories) • Detective stories and romances are popular forms of fiction. ⇒ μυθιστοριογραφία, μυθιστορήματα

7.75 **genre** (n) – (of art forms) style or type • Murder mysteries and science fiction are his two favourite genres of fiction. ⇒ θέατρο, τάκτικα είδωλο (παθην τέχνην)

7.76 **hit** (n) – (of a show, play, song) sth which is very successful • The album was a hit and sold over 3 million copies in the first week. ⇒ ταλαιπωρία

7.77 **novel** (n) – book telling a story • Charles Dickens wrote some great novels, like ‘Oliver Twist’ and ‘Great Expectations’. ⇒ μυθιστοριογραφία, λογοτεχνικό είδος

7.78 **review** (n) – a report giving someone’s opinion of something new • His new film got very good reviews. ⇒ review (v), reviewer (n) • κριτική (παθην τέχνην, βιβλίου, κινηματογράφου)

B (page 118)

7.79 **author** (n) – writer (e.g., of a book, article, or report) • I hear you’re writing a novel. I didn’t realise you wanted to become an author. ⇒ author (v) • συγγραφέας

7.80 **composer** (n) – person who writes music • Mozart is her favourite classical composer, but her husband prefers Beethoven. ⇒ composition (n), compose (v) • συνθέτης (μουσικής)

7.81 **conductor** (n) – person who directs an orchestra, band, or choir • The concert audience fell silent when the conductor tapped his baton and signalled the orchestra to begin the symphony. ⇒ conduct (v) • μελέτρος

7.82 **director** (n) – person who supervises the creative aspects of a performance (e.g., a movie, play, or TV show) and/or the people involved in it • Costa-Gavras is one of the greatest Greek movie directors of all time. ⇒ direction (n), direct (v) • αορνοθέτης

7.83 **extra** (n) – film actor who has a very small part • We have to shoot a crowd scene, so we’ll need about two hundred extras. ⇒ κομπάρσο

7.84 **illustrator** (n) – sb who draws pictures, especially for books • The name of the author and the illustrator are on the cover of the children’s book. ⇒ illustrate (v), illustration (n) • εικονογράφος

7.85 **playwright** (n) – sb who writes plays • Aeschylus and Sophocles are among the leading playwrights of classical Greece. ⇒ δραματουργός, θεατρικός συγγραφέας

C (page 118)

7.86 **beat** (n) – (music) rhythm • She likes music with a strong, driving beat. ⇒ beat (v) • ρυθμός

7.87 **instrumental** (n) – of or related to musical instruments • He has always preferred listening to instrumental music than to music written for choirs. ⇒ instrument (n) • ενόργανο

7.88 **lyrics** (pl n) – the words of a song • I love the melody of that song, but I can never remember the lyrics. ⇒ lyric (adj), lyrical (adj) • στίχοι (μουσικής)

7.89 **soundtrack** (n) – the music that accompanies a film • The film was brilliant and the soundtrack was really good, too. ⇒ συνθέτης κινηματογραφικής ταινίας

7.90 **vocals** (pl n) – the sung part of a song (not the instrumental part) • John is on drums, Mike is on guitar and Pete is on vocals. ⇒ vocal (adj), vocalise (v)

D (page 118)

7.91 **decrease** (v) – become or make sth become fewer or lesser • Tourism has decreased this year; people don’t have enough money to travel. ⇒ The boss says he is going to have to decrease the staff by 20%, so don’t have enough money to travel. ⇒ decrease (n), decreasing (adj), decreased (adj), ⇒ Opp: increase • μειώνω, χαμηλώνω, αφήνω πέσει

7.92 **drop** (v) – let sth fall by mistake • She dropped her glass and it smashed on the floor. ⇒ drop (n) • πίκνω, αφήνω κάτι να πέσει

7.93 **lower** (v) – reduce, decrease, make less • Chemotherapy destroys white blood cells and therefore lowers the body’s resistance to disease. ⇒ μείωση, χαμηλόπτωση

7.94 **reduce** (v) – lower, make sth smaller in size, quantity, number, or degree • During a sale, stores reduce their prices in the hope of attracting large numbers of customers. ⇒ reduction (n), reduced (adj) • μειώνω, ειδατώνω

E (page 118)

7.95 **applaud** (v) – 1. clap, show approval by hitting your open hands together • The audience applauded as the actors came out on stage for their final bows. 2. show that you approve of sth/agree with sth • θεατρικός συγγραφέας
all applauded the decision to ban smoking indoors. ➢ applause (n)  1. χαροκροτώ, 2. επικροτώ
7.96 cheer (v) – shout loudly to encourage a person or a team during a race, game, etc  ● The crowd began to cheer when the players walked onto the field. ➢ cheer (n)  ζωγραφιάζω
7.97 clap (v) – applaud, show approval by hitting your open hands together  ● The audience clapped as the actors came out on stage for their final bows. ➢ clap (n)  χειροκροτώ
7.98 jeer (v) – show disapproval by booing, hissing or yelling insults  ● The crowd jeered as the unpopular footballer came onto the pitch. ➢ jeer (n)  χλεύαζω, περιγελώ, γιουχαΐζω

F (page 119)
7.99 grin (v) – smile broadly  ● she grinned from ear to ear when she heard the good news. ➢ grin (n)  χαμογελώ, πλατιά
7.100 mumble (v) – speak quietly and unclearly so it is difficult for others to hear  ● The ill-prepared student mumbled his answer, hoping his classmates wouldn’t hear. ➢ mumble (n)  μουρμουρίζω, μουρμουρίζομαι, τράγγος τη λέγω μου
7.101 scream (v) – yell, shout on a high note (often in fear, excitement, pain)  ● As the rollercoaster went up and around the big loop, we all screamed. ➢ scream (n)  ζητωκραυγάζω
7.102 whisper (v) – speak very quietly so that only the person you are talking to can hear you  ● Not wanting anyone else to hear, he whispered his answer in her ear. ➢ whisper (n), whispered (adj), whispering (adj)  ψιθυρίζω, ψιθυρίζομαι
7.103 yell (v) – shout or say very loudly  ● She yelled at her son to stop jumping up and down on the sofa. ➢ yell (n)  ωρύομαι, σκούζω

Similar but different: scream and yell are similar and mean almost the same thing. A scream is usually on a high note and women are more likely to scream than men. You can yell instructions or insults at someone but you don’t usually say anything when you scream.

G (page 119)
7.104 frame (n) – the wood, metal, or plastic border that goes around a picture or a mirror  ● You can buy the painting with or without the frame. ➢ framed (adj), frame (v)  κορνίζω, πλαίσιο
7.105 oil painting (n) – a picture that has been painted using oil paints  ● The oil painting hanging on that wall cost her over £5,000. ➢ ελαιογραφία
7.106 poster (n) – large printed notice, picture or photograph  ● We put up some posters around the town advertising the play. ➢ φωτογραφία
7.107 sculpture (n) – something that is made by shaping stone, wood, ice, etc  ● At the exhibition we saw a strange sculpture of Venus. ➢ sculpt (v), sculptor (n)  γλυπτό, γλυπτική
7.108 sketch (n) – simple, quickly-made drawing  ● He did a few sketches of the landscape before he drove away. ➢ sketch (v)  οριστρό

H (page 119)
7.109 exhibit (n) – object or group of objects on display in a museum or other public place  ● Everyone’s favourite part of the Museum of Natural History tour is the dinosaur exhibit. ➢ exhibit (v), exhibition (n)  εκθέμα
7.110 landscape (n) – scenery, what you see when you look at a place (e.g., hills, water, plant life)  ● Snow-capped mountains and beautiful green valleys are characteristic of the landscape in the Swiss Alps. ➢ landscape (v)  τοπίο
7.111 masterpiece (n) – an exceptional work of art, often one that is among the best an artist has ever produced  ● The museum prides itself on its collection of Impressionist masterpieces. ➢ αριστούργημα
7.112 premiere (n) – (plays, films) first public performance  ● The premiere of the film was attended by dozens of Hollywood stars. ➢ πρεμιέρα
7.113 puppet (n) – a doll that can be moved by someone who pulls strings or moves their hand inside its body  ● Dave took the children to a puppet show on Saturday. ➢ puppeteer (n)  μαριονέτα
7.114 tale (n) – a story  ● The film is a classic tale in which a homeless man gets a job as a mailroom employee and then works his way up to become managing director of a multinational corporation. ➢ ιστορία
7.115 tune (n) – a short song or piece of music  ● This radio station usually plays the most popular tunes. ➢ σκοπός, μελωδία
7.116 keep up (phr v) – maintain a standard, continue
   • Keep up the good work and you’ll pass all your exams. • διατηρώ, συνεχίζω
7.117 let in for (phr v) – get involved in, cause to experience sth difficult
   • When I agreed to come with you on your mountain-climbing course, I didn’t know what I was letting myself in for. • μπλέκω σε κάτι, φορτώνω
7.118 live up to (phr v) – reach an expected standard, be as good as or perform as well as sb expects
   • His parents wanted him to become a doctor, but he found it impossible to live up to their expectations. • φαίνομαι αντάξιος
7.119 look up to (phr v) – admire, respect
   • It’s natural for young children to look up to their teachers. • θαυμάζω, σέβομαι, εκτιμώ
7.120 pass out (phr v) – distribute, hand out
   • The class fell silent as the teacher began to pass out the test booklets. • μοιράζω, διανέμω
7.121 play down (phr v) – reduce the importance of, pretend sth is less important than it really is
   • Hoping to avoid panic, the news broadcaster played down the damage the earthquake had caused. • μειώνω/υποβαθμίζω τη σημασία

7.122 pull in (phr v) – attract, be appealing enough to make people want to visit and/or spend money there
   • London pulls in many visitors during the summer. • προσελκύω, ελκύω, τραβάω
7.123 stand out (phr v) – be noticeable, be better or more important than
   • All the children in the family are clever but Paul really stands out. • ξεχωρίζω
7.124 turn down (phr v) – refuse (an offer), say no
   • They turned down our offer to help them. They said they didn’t need us. • απορρίπτω
7.125 turn out (phr v) – be the result in the end
   • The surprise party turned out better than we expected. / It turned out to be a most enjoyable evening. • καταλήγω, αποδεικνύομαι
7.126 in association with (expr) – joined in a business relationship with  • Our company is working on this project in association with two other companies. ➢ associate (n, v) συνεργάζομαι, σε εμπορική συνεργασία με

7.127 be satisfied with (expr) – be content with  • I'm not satisfied with this hotel; let's see if we can find another one. ➢ satisfy (v), satisfaction (n), dissatisfied (adj) είμαι ικανοποιημένος με

7.128 in public (expr) – with people around  • She's polite to her mother in public, but she's very rude to her at home. ➢ Opp: in private δημοσίως

English in Use (page 124)

Idioms

7.132 the thumbs up (idm) – approval and acceptance  • The bank has given us the thumbs up, so we can go ahead with our plans to open a restaurant.

7.133 miss the boat (idm) – not act quickly enough and lose an opportunity  • Tell Harry you'll go to the concert with him; otherwise you'll miss the boat and lose an opportunity. ❖ αποδοχή επικρότηση, ❖ αποδοχή επικρότηση

7.134 got too big for her boots (idm) – behaved as if she's more important than she is  • She's got too big for her boots since she won the lottery; now she won't even talk to us.

7.135 a foot in the door (idm) – a successful start, in a position from which it is easier to go forward and do well (in a career/socially, etc)  • She wants to become an actress, but it's very difficult to get a foot in the door unless you know someone in the business.

7.136 pull the strings (idm) – 1. be in control  • Who pulls the strings in that business? 2. use your influence with important people to get what you want  • My uncle had to pull a few strings to get me out of jail.

7.137 on the edge of my seat (idm) – very interested  • We were on the edge of our seats waiting for the election results.

Sayings

7.138 more haste, less speed (expr) – if you hurry, you will make mistakes and get to your destination later than if you are slower and more careful  • I was in a hurry to get to the cinema and forgot my glasses. So I had to go back home to get them and missed the first half of the film. It's true what they say: more haste, less speed.

7.139 the more, the merrier (expr) – it's fun when a lot of people attend sth  • I hope everyone from my class comes to the party. You know what they say: the more, the merrier.

7.140 better late than never (expr) – it's better you are here for some of the time than not at all  • I don't mind if you are late. Better late than never.

7.141 easier said than done (expr) – that's more difficult than it sounds  • 'Just go up to her and ask her to go to the party with you.' 'That's easier said than done!'

7.142 better safe than sorry (expr) – it's better to be careful and safe, than be sorry that something terrible has happened because you haven't been careful  • I know you don't want to wear your helmet on your bike - but better safe than sorry.

7.143 two heads are better than one (expr) – it's better to have help when you are thinking about sth because there will be more ideas  • Ask Jane to help you with your problem. After all, two heads are better than one.
8 Conditionals
Other Conditional Forms

Vocabulary 1 (page 128)

A (page 128)

8.01 greenhouse effect (n phr) – (U) natural phenomenon in which water vapour and other gases in the earth's atmosphere keep in the sun's heat and help warm the planet ● Without the greenhouse effect, the earth would be a cold planet unable to support life. ❖ φαινόμενο του θερμοκηπίου

8.02 greenhouse gas (n phr) – a gas that is responsible for causing the greenhouse effect ● Greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide are the main cause of global warming. ❖ αέριο που συμβάλλει στη δημιουργία του φαινομένου του θερμοκηπίου

8.03 ozone layer (n) – part of the earth's atmosphere that contains significant amounts of ozone ● The earth's ozone layer protects life on earth from the full force of the sun's ultraviolet rays. ❖ στρώμα του οζόντος

8.04 global warming (n phr) – the slow rise in the earth's temperature (caused by too much carbon dioxide in the earth's atmosphere) ❖ υπερθέρμανση του πλανήτη

B (page 128)

8.05 lightning (n) – flash of light in the sky during a storm ● A tree in our garden was struck by lightning and fell down. ❖ αστραπή

8.06 pressure (n) – the strength of the force or weight put on sth ● Sometimes I get a headache when there is a change in atmospheric pressure. ❖ pressurise (v), pressurised (adj), pressured (adj), pressurisation (n) ❖ πιέση

8.07 temperature (n) – the degree or intensity of heat present in sth ● I don't know what the temperature is exactly, but it feels like it's well below freezing. Brrrr! / Water boils at a temperature of 100 degrees Centigrade. ❖ θερμοκρασία

8.08 thunder (n) – loud noise that comes after lightning during a storm ● Our dogs don't like the sound of thunder; they hide under the table when there is a thunder storm. ❖ βροντή

8.09 weather (n) – the state of the atmosphere with regard to temperature, cloudiness, rainfall, wind, and meteorological conditions ● The weather has been hot and sunny for the last two weeks. ❖ καιρός, καιρικές συνθήκες

C (page 128)

8.10 dissolve (v) – cause sth solid to become mixed with a liquid and disappear ● Over the years the groundwater in the cave began to dissolve the limestone walls. ❖ dissolution (n), dissolved (adj), dissolvable (adj) ❖ διαλύεται (στερεό σε υγρό)

8.11 freeze (v) – change from a liquid to ice ● When it gets really cold outside, even the puddles freeze over. ❖ frozen (adj), freezing (adj) ❖ παγώνει, καταφύγει

8.12 melt (v) – change from a solid to a liquid ● Ice cream melts quickly when it's a sunny day. ❖ λιώνει

8.13 rise (v) – go upwards ● Smoke rose from the fire. ❖ ανέρχομαι, αναθάλασσομαι

8.14 thaw (v) – become / make sth liquid or soft after it has been frozen ● Frozen food thaws when you take it out of the freezer. ❖ ξεπαγώνω, ξεπαγώνει

D (page 128)

8.15 burst (v) – break or explode because of pressure from the inside ● We all jumped when the balloon burst without warning. ❖ απώνει, ακώνει.

Note: The verb is irregular: burst – burst – burst

8.16 dispose of (of) (v) – (things) throw away ● Where can I dispose of my old newspapers? Is there a recycling bin somewhere nearby? ❖ disposal (n), disposable (adj), disposed (adj) ❖ πετώ, ξεφορτώνομαι

8.17 dump (v) – throw sth away because it is no longer needed ● They opened the garbage bag and dumped its contents on the side of the road. ❖ ξεφορτώνω

8.18 pollute (v) – make air, water, or land unclean and dangerous ● The factory was polluting the river by pouring dirty water into it. ❖ ρίχνω, πετώ, ξεφορτώνω

8.19 recycle (v) – use sth again or process sth so that it can be used again rather than be thrown away ● The mayor encourages everyone in the community to recycle paper, plastic, and glass. ❖ ξεφορτώνω, ρίχνω, πετώ

8.20 spoil (v) – ruin, turn sth good into sth bad, useless or unpleasant ● Don't say anything to Mary about the party or you'll spoil the surprise. ❖ χαλώ, χαλώνω, χαλώνω
8.21 waste (v) – use more of sth than is necessary
• Don’t leave your lights on when you go out because it wastes energy. ➢ waste (n), wasteful (adj), wastefully (adv) ❖ αποταμίευση

E (page 128)
8.22 ash (n) – greyish-white powder that is left when sth has been burned • (U) After the fire, everything in the area was covered with a fine layer of ash. ➢ ashen (adj) ❖ στάχτη
8.23 fog (n) – very small drops of water in the air that make it difficult to see • We didn’t want to go outside in case we lost our way in the fog. ➢ foggy (adj) ❖ ομίχλη
8.24 frost (n) – very thin layer of white, powdery ice (not snow) covering everything outside when it is very cold • The grass, trees and even the spider webs were covered with frost. ➢ frosty (adj) ❖ πάχνη, παγετός
8.25 fumes (pl n) – unpleasant and often unhealthy smoke and gases produced by the burning of chemicals, fuel, etc. • The horrible car fumes make it impossible for her to cycle in the city’s heavy traffic. ❖ καυσαέρια, αναθυμιάσεις
8.26 mist (n) – cloud of fine drops of water in the air, less thick than fog • As the sun came up, the early-morning mist disappeared to reveal a beautiful, sunny day. ➢ misty (adj) ❖ ελαφριά, υδρονέφωση, θολούρα, υδρονέφωση
8.27 smog (n) – mixture of fog, smoke, and toxic chemicals that hangs over big cities or industrial areas • As they looked down onto the city from the top of the mountain, they could see a layer of yellow smog covering the valley. ➢ smoggy (adj) ❖ αιθαλομίχλη, νέφος

F (page 129)
8.28 conserve (v) – use sth wisely or sparingly to protect it from being wasted, damaged or destroyed • We should conserve water during a summer drought. ➢ conservation (n) ❖ χρησιμοποίησε με φερδιά
8.29 preserve (v) – keep sth in its original state or in good condition • The monument was built to preserve the memory of Martin Luther King, Jr. • We must do our best to preserve wildlife and the wilderness for future generations. ➢ preservative (n, adj), preservation (n), preserved (adj) ❖ διατηρώ, προστατεύω, συντηρώ
8.30 protect (v) – prevent sb/sth being harmed or damaged • This lotion will protect your skin from the harmful rays of the sun. ➢ protection (n), protected (adj) ❖ προστατεύω

G (page 129)
8.31 reclaim (v) – to make an area suitable for building on • Large parts of Holland have been reclaimed from the sea. ➢ reclamation (n) ❖ αποξηραίνω, κάνω προσχώσεις
8.32 fossil fuel (n phr) – (C) fuel produced by the very slow decaying of animals or plants over millions of years • Examples of fossil fuels include coal, petroleum, and natural gas. ❖ υρικό καύσιμο
8.33 level (n) – the height of sth • Building a home at sea level is a risky business nowadays. 2. (C) a point or position on a scale of quality, quantity, strength • a high level of achievement, the unbearable noise level of a big city ➢ level (v, adj) ❖ 1. στάθμη 2. επίπεδο
8.34 natural resource (n phr) – sth that occurs in nature and can be used for economic gain • The country’s vast forests and rich soil are its greatest natural resources. ❖ φυσικός πόρος
8.35 source (n) – place where sth begins or comes from • Tom’s not been himself lately. Do you know what the source of his unhappiness is? ➢ πηγή
8.36 spring (n) – a place where water comes out of the earth from an underground source • There were several hot springs near the volcano. ➢ spring (v) ❖ θερμοπηγή

H (page 129)
8.37 alternative energy (n phr) – type of energy that is different from traditional types, like wind, wave, solar, etc. • Alternative energy is usually kinder to the environment. ❖ εναλλακτική ενέργεια
8.38 wind farm (n phr) – place where there are many windmills creating electricity • Sometimes wind farms are on hillsides or in the sea. ❖ σταθμός παραγωγής αιολικής ενέργειας
8.39 plug (n) – small object with two or three pins which you put into a socket in the wall to connect something to an electricity supply • The iron will not work if you don’t put the plug into the socket in the wall. ➢ plug (v) ❖ φις, βύσμα
8.40 power station (n phr) – large building in which electricity is made • We could see the huge power station far away on the horizon. ➢ σταθμός παραγωγής πελεκτρικής ενέργειας
8.41 socket (n) – device (usually with holes or a specially shaped hollow place) that allows sth to be connected to a source of electricity • The plug doesn’t fit in the socket so I can’t use the hairdryer. ❖ πρίζα, υποδοχή
8.42 **carry on** (phr v) – continue • The soldier was wounded, but he managed to carry on to the end of the battle. ✯ συνεχίζω

8.43 **clear up** (phr v) – stop raining • It had been raining all morning but by lunchtime it cleared up and the sun began to shine. ✯ (ο καιρός / ο ουρανός) καθαρίζει

8.44 **come out** (phr v) – 1. (of the sun) appear • It was cloudy, then the sun came out. 2. (of flowers or trees) start to bloom • It’s been a cold spring; the trees have still not begun to come out. ✯ 1. βγαίνω (για τον ήλιο), 2. ανθίζω

8.45 **come up** (phr v) – (of the sun) rise • When the sun comes up in the morning, the birds start to sing. ➢ Opp: go down ✯ ανατέλλω

8.46 **count on (sb)** (phr v) – depend on sth/sb, put your trust in sth/sb • Children count on their parents to provide them with food, clothing, and love. ✯ βασίζομαι σε κάτι

8.47 **cut down (on sth)** (phr v) – reduce sth, do sth less often or in less quantity than before • After he cut down on his smoking, he coughed less and could breathe more easily. ✯ περιορίζω (την κατανάλωση)

8.48 **get through (sth)** (phr v) – use up, finish • No matter how much food she buys, her hungry teenagers always seem to get through it in a few days. ✯ τελειώνω

8.49 **get up to** (phr v) – reach an amount/level • If her temperature gets up to 40 degrees, you should call the doctor. ✯ φθάνω, αγγίζω

8.50 **leave on** (phr v) – allow to stay in use • Don’t leave the air-conditioning on if you leave the house. ✯ αφήνω κάτι σε λειτουργία

8.51 **stand by** (phr v) – look on and do nothing • All they could do was stand by and wait as the fire brigade attempted to save their burning home. ✯ παρακολουθώ χωρίς να επεμβάνω

8.52 **put the blame on (sb)** (v phr) – say that sth is sb’s fault • After the accident, the other driver tried to put the blame on me. ✯ ρίχνω την ευθύνη σε κάποιον

8.53 **(be/get) involved in** (expr) – take part in or be connected with something • They were arguing about money but I didn’t want to get involved. ➢ involve (v), involvement (n) ✯ παίρνω μέρος σε κάτι, ανακατεύομαι σε κάτι

8.54 **hear (of)** (v) – have knowledge or receive information about • Have you ever heard of an actor called Tom Jackson? ✯ άκουω, μαθαίνω (για)
express concern about (expr) – say that you are worried about • He expressed his concern about how much I was spending every month on rent. ❖ ανησυχώ για κάτι, εκφράζω το ενδιαφέρον μου για κάτι

step in the right direction (idm) – an action that is not complete but is a good beginning • Telling her mother may not be the answer to the problem, but at least it’s a step in the right direction. ❖ το πρώτο βήμα στη σωστή κατεύθυνση

be in control (expr) – have the main influence over • A pilot is in control of his aircraft. ❖ έχω τον έλεγχο

ashamed (of oneself) (adj) – feel embarrassed or guilty about sth one has done • The girl felt ashamed of herself for having lied to her father. ➣ shame (n) ❖ που ντρέπεται για κάτι

boil (v) – heat a liquid until it reaches a point when it starts to turn into gas • Water boils at 100 degrees centigrade. ➣ boiled (adj), boiling (adj) ❖ βράζω

emission (n) – sth released or discharged into the air (e.g., gas, light, heat, matter) • Toxic emissions from cars and factories pollute the air. ➣ emit (v) ❖ εκπομπή (αερίου, φωτός κτλ)

outlet (n) – means of releasing one’s energy or emotions • Play is a good outlet for a child’s energy. / Crying is a therapeutic outlet for grief. ❖ διέξοδος

season (n) – spring, summer, autumn or winter • I like all four seasons of the year, but summer is my favourite. ➣ seasonal (adj) ❖ εποχή

explode (v) – blow up with a loud noise • A bomb exploded in the street but nobody was hurt. ➣ explosion (n), explosive (n, adj), explosively (adv) ❖ εκρήγνυμαι, (ανα)ομαζόμαι

amount (n) – quantity • There was only a small amount of rice on his plate. ❖ ποσότητα
Vocabulary 2 (page 133)

A (page 133)
8.71 downpour (n) – sudden, heavy rainfall ● She got caught in the downpour without an umbrella and arrived at work soaking wet. ❖ μπόρα, ύπνονορά
8.72 drought (n) – period without enough rain, long dry spell ● The long drought has caused crop failure and famine in the poor African country. ❖ ἐπαναληπτικός ελέυθερος
8.73 famine (n) – widespread lack of food, often resulting from drought, war, or other catastrophe ● Thousands of children are in danger of starving to death as a result of the year-long famine. ❖ ἁμίανσις
8.74 flood (n) – a large amount of water that covers an area of land that is usually dry ● Hundreds of farm animals died in the flood. ➢ flood (v), flooding (n) ❖ γηφάισις
8.75 hail (n) – balls of ice that fall from the sky ● The rain turned to hail as the temperature dropped. ➢ hail (v) ❖ χαλάζι
8.76 hurricane (n) – a violent wind, storm, etc ● All the houses along the coast were destroyed in the hurricane. ➢ hurricane (v) ❖ τυφώνας
8.77 storm (n) – violent weather conditions including rain, thunder, lightning and wind ● I couldn’t sleep last night because of the storm. ➢ stormy (adj) ❖ καταιγίδα

B (page 133)
8.78 ice cap (n) – a thick layer of ice and snow that covers the North or South Pole ● If the polar ice caps melt, the sea level will rise. ➢ ice cap (v), polar cap (n) ❖ πάγοι, πάγον, πάγονα 
8.79 cliff (n) – area of high, steep rock ● The rock climber fell to his death while attempting to climb the towering cliff. ➢ θάλασσα, ἄλπεις
8.80 glacier (n) – large mass of ice that moves slowly down a mountain valley ● Europe was covered with glaciers during the last ice age. ➢ glacial (adj) ❖ γαλακτοτέριο
8.81 gorge (n) – deep, narrow valley with hills or mountains on either side (e.g., the Samaria Gorge in Crete) ➢ θάλασσα, ἄλπεις
8.82 valley (n) – area of land between two lines of hills or mountains often with a river running through it ● A river flowed through the valley to the sea. ➢ κοιλάδα
8.83 volcano (n) – mountain with an opening from which lava, ash, and rock occasionally erupt ● The volcano has been inactive for years, but lately there are signs that it may erupt again. ➢ volcanic (adj) ❖ πυραίωσις

C (page 133)
8.84 dust (n) – very fine powder made of small particles of earth ● There was a thin layer of dust on the table. ➢ dust (v), dusty (adj) ➢ σκόνη
8.85 (why/what/where) on earth (expr) – used with a question word to give force to a question ● Why on earth are you wearing that awful hat? ➢ γιατί / Ποιον από τη συνείδησή; ➢ σκόνη
8.86 ground (n) – the surface of the earth ● After the storm, most of the apples had fallen off the tree onto the ground. ➢ έδαφος, χώμα
8.87 land (n) – dry part of the earth’s surface ● There’s a beautiful sandy beach where the land meets the sea. ➢ land (v) ➢ σεμερί, έρημο
8.88 soil (n) – covering of the earth in which plants grow ● We dug a hole in the soil and planted a tree. ➢ χώμα
8.89 surface (n) – the top area of something ● We saw two bottles floating on the surface of the river. ➢ surface (v) ➢ επιφάνεια

D (page 134)
8.90 damp (adj) – containing water vapour, slightly wet ● Greece has a dry climate; it’s not damp like England. ➢ dampness (n), dampen (v) ➢ υγρός
8.91 humid (adj) – (air, climate) containing water vapour ● It was hot and humid in the sauna. ➢ humidity (n), humidify (v) ➢ θάλασσα, σκόνη, αέρα
8.92 mild (adj) – (of temperature or climate) gentle, warm ● Winters in Greece are usually mild in comparison to the bitterly cold winters in Germany. ➢ ένθος
8.93 wet weather (n phr) – rain ● We are used to wet weather in winter in the UK. ➢ υγρός καιρός

Similar but different: damp and humid are similar words but we usually use the word humid with warm conditions and the word damp with unpleasant cold conditions: cold and damp, hot and humid. We can also say that clothes are damp or walls are damp. Humid is only used to describe the air or the climate.

E (page 134)
8.94 calculation (n) – an act of calculating (i.e., figuring out using numbers) ● According to my calculations, you still owe me five hundred pounds. ➢ calculate (v) ➢ υπολογισμός
8.95 forecast (n) – statement of future events based on given information ● According to the weather forecast, it’s going to be sunny tomorrow. ➢ forecast (v) ➢ πρόγνωση, πρόβλεψη, διεύθυνση καιρού
8.96 indication (n) – sign or hint that shows or suggests sth • Their divorce was a surprise to everyone, they had given us no indication that their marriage was unhappy. / The doctor was concerned when he saw no indication that the patient was responding to treatment. ➞ indicator (n), indicate (v), indicative (adj) ❖ ενδείξη

8.97 prediction (n) – statement about what will happen in the future • The teacher’s prediction that everyone would pass the exam turned out to be true. ➞ predict (v), predictable (adj) ❖ πρόβλεψη

8.98 warning (n) – something that tells a person to be careful • The child didn’t take my warning seriously and hurt himself. ➞ warn (v) ❖ προειδοποιούμενο

8.99 agriculture (n) – the practice of growing crops and raising farm animals; farming • He grew up on a farm and is now pursuing a career in agriculture. ➞ agriculturist (n), agricultural (adj), agriculturally (adv) ❖ γεωργία

8.100 biofuel (n) – fuel made from plants • Biofuels are environmentally friendly. ❖ βιοκαύσιμα

8.101 crop (n) – plants such as wheat, corn, etc grown in large quantities • The heavy rain destroyed their crops. ❖ καλλιέργεια καρπός

8.102 erosion (n) – slow wearing away of soil or rock by natural forces (e.g., wind or water) • The Grand Canyon is the result of millions of years of erosion. ➞ erode (v), erosive (adj) ❖ διάβρωση

8.103 fertilizer (n) – a substance that is used to make plants grow better • They don’t use chemical fertilizers – all the vegetables on their farm are organically grown. ➞ fertilize (v), fertilization (n) ❖ λιπασμα

8.104 irrigation (n) – the act of supplying water to land that is usually dry • The irrigation of desert areas can be accomplished by digging canals and constructing a vast network of pipelines for carrying water. ➞ irrigate (v), irrigated (adj) ❖ ρεύμα

8.105 geothermal (adj) – related to/warmed by heat generated from the earth’s core • geothermal springs ❖ γεωθερμικός

8.106 harmful (adj) – having a negative effect • Avoid using products that are harmful to the environment. ➞ harm (v, n), Opp: harmless ❖ βλακτικός, επιζημιώδης

8.107 nuclear power (n) – power (usually electricity) from the force produced when the nucleus of an atom splits • Some people think that living near a nuclear power station gives you a higher risk of developing cancer. ❖ πυρηνική ενέργεια

8.108 toxic (adj) – poisonous • The decision was made to bury the toxic waste in a container deep underground. ➞ toxic (n), toxicity (n), toxically (adv) ❖ τοξικός

8.109 current (n) – movement of water or air in a continuous stream • It was difficult to paddle the canoe going upstream, as the current in the river was very strong. ❖ ρεύμα

8.110 draught (n) – unpleasant flow of cool air inside a room or house • Don’t forget to bring a sweater with you. Grandma’s house is old and full of draughts. ➞ draughty (adj) ❖ ρεύμα αέρα

8.111 flow (of sth) (n) – (U) steady and continuous movement of sth • a flow of energy or water, a flow of refugees escaping from a war-torn country ❖ ρέω

8.112 shower (n) – (C) (weather) short period of rain or snow • You’d better take your umbrella as the forecast is for showers today. ❖ μπόρα

8.113 stream (n) – small, narrow river • The stream at the back of our house dries up in summer, but in the spring it’s full of fast-flowing water. ➞ stream (v), streaming (adj) ❖ ποτάμι, ποτάμιο, ποτάμια, ισχία, ρυάκι

8.114 tornado (n) – violent V-shaped wind storm, similar to a cyclone • The swirling tornado pulled roofs off houses and uprooted trees. ❖ σφουγγαριά, ανεμοστρόβιλος

**Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 135)**

8.115 get (sb) down (phr v) – make unhappy • Rainy weather always gets him down; he feels much happier when the sun is shining. ❖ καταθλίβω

8.116 live through (phr v) – experience (a difficult period) and survive it • It is doubtful that the seriously wounded soldier will live through the operation. ❖ περιήγημα μια δύσκολη περίοδο και επιζώ

8.117 put out (phr v) – issue (information) • The government put out a statement explaining its actions. ❖ Ανακοινώνω, προέβλεψη

8.118 run out of (phr v) – use up all of sth, have no more of • We’ve run out of sugar, so you won’t be able to bake a cake until we buy some more. ❖ εξαντλώ, τελειώνω, τελειώνομαι, τελειώνουμενο
8.119 **see to (it)** (phr v) – make sure sth happens

- *Please see to it that he gets to school on time.*

8.120 **set in** (phr v) – begin/appear and seem likely to continue

- *Judging from the 6 inches of snow on the ground, I’d say that winter has finally set in.*

8.121 **set off** (phr v) – cause sth to start, prompt, trigger (e.g., a bomb, an alarm, a series of events)

- *Economic problems in the USA could set off a chain reaction around the world.*

8.122 **set out** (phr v) – arrange, display, put sth in a place where people can see it

- *When her friends came to visit, the new bride set out all her wedding presents.*

8.123 **throw out** (phr v) – (objects) get rid of sth, dispose of sth, throw sth away (eg, because it is no longer wanted or useful)

- *Please throw out that old jumper. It’s got holes in it.*

8.124 **wipe out** (phr v) – destroy completely

- *If illegal hunting is not controlled, it will wipe out the elephant population here.*

---

**Prepositions 2 (page 135)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appeal</td>
<td>appeal to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense/duty</td>
<td>sense of duty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>size of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire</td>
<td>on fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>out of date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>release</td>
<td>release sth into sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>request</td>
<td>request for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>response</td>
<td>in response to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have an answer</td>
<td>have an answer to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rain</td>
<td>in the rain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

8.125 **appeal (to)** (v) – attract or interest sb

- *The novel appeals to him because it portrays his home town at the turn of the 20th century.*

8.126 **sense of duty** (n phr) – feeling that one has a responsibility to do sth

- *Out of a sense of duty, he visits his grandmother once a week.*

8.127 **on fire** (expr) – alight

- *He stood too close to the flames and suddenly realised he was on fire.*

8.128 **in response to** (prep phr) – in answer to

- *In response to your letter, I would like to inform you that the position has now been filled.*
8.129 all at sea (idm) – very confused • When I started my first job, I was all at sea: I didn’t know what was going on. ✯ ανοικοσανατολισμός, χαμένος

8.130 a race against time (idm) – a situation where fast action is needed • The doctor was in a race against time to save the woman’s life. ✯ «μάχη με το χρόνο», αγώνας δρόμου με αντίπαλο το χρόνο

8.131 walking on thin ice (idm) – getting into a difficult situation • You’re walking on thin ice: you haven’t studied and your exam is next week. ✯ ευρισκόμενος σε δύσκολη κατάσταση

8.132 up in the air (idm) – not settled yet • I don’t know if we are going camping yet; everything’s still up in the air. ✯ αβέβαιος, μετέωρος

8.133 go the extra mile (idm) – make a special effort • He didn’t just take her to the seaside for a picnic; he went the extra mile and hired a boat for the day. ✯ κάνω το παρακάτω βήμα

8.134 pie in the sky (idm) – not likely to happen • All these ideas about winning the lottery are just pie in the sky; it’s never going to happen. ✯ ουτοπία
A (page 144)

9.01 fee (n) – (C) money paid to be allowed to do sth or to use the services of a professional. For a small fee, students may use the school's gym and library facilities. / It was difficult for him to pay the lawyer's fees.  

9.02 fine (n) – amount of money that someone must pay for breaking a law or rule. She had to pay a fine for speeding.  

9.03 ransom (n) – amount of money given to free sb who is held as a prisoner illegally. They kidnapped the bank manager and demanded a ransom of one million pounds.  

9.04 criminal record (n) – an official record of the crimes a person has committed. His criminal record made it difficult for him to find a job.  

9.05 reward (n) – money offered or given in recognition for sth good that sb has done (e.g., return lost or stolen property, help police solve a crime). The police are offering a reward of £5,000 for information leading to the arrest of the murder suspect.  

B (page 144)

9.06 alibi (n) – sb that proves that sb else was not where a crime happened and therefore could not have done it. I was with my sister when the man was murdered, so she is my alibi.  

9.07 case (n) – a crime that police are investigating. Detective Thomson managed to solve the case in less than three weeks.  

9.08 court (n) – (law) room or building where all the information about a crime is given so that it can be judged and all the people in it, especially the judge and the jury. He was prepared to go to court to get his money back from her if necessary.  

9.09 enquiry (n) – research or investigation conducted to obtain needed information. The company is conducting an enquiry to find out why there have been so many complaints about its customer service department recently.  

9.10 offence (n) – a crime. Driving without a licence is a criminal offence.  

9.11 sentence (n) – amount of time that a convicted criminal must spend in prison. The judge gave the convicted murderer a life sentence.  

9.12 trial (n) – formal examination of evidence in a court of law. The trial will take place in two months, which gives the lawyers plenty of time to prepare their cases. / The suspect was arrested and put on trial for murder.  

C (page 144)

9.13 accuse (sb of sth) (v) – say that sb has broken the law or done sth wrong. She accused her son of taking money from her purse.  

9.14 arrest (v) – take someone to a police station because they are believed to have done something wrong. The two thieves were arrested earlier today.  

9.15 charge (v) – accuse or make a claim against sb. When the police had enough evidence, the suspect was arrested and charged with murder.  

9.16 detain (v) – hold/delay sb in a place and prevent them from leaving. Police have detained several suspects at the police station for further questioning.  

9.17 escape (v) – manage to get out of a place or away from something. The lions escaped from their cage and people panicked.  

D (page 144)

9.18 alarm (n) – bell or loud sound that warns people of danger. When you leave the house, don’t forget to put the burglar alarm on. / The burglar alarm went off when I was sleeping, so I was afraid that someone was trying to get into the house.
9.19 bar (n) – a long straight piece of wood, metal, etc
- There were iron bars on all the windows, so they couldn’t escape. ♦ μπάρα, Βέργα, ράβδος

9.20 behind bars (idm) – (informal) in prison
- The bank robber had already spent ten years of his life behind bars. ♦ στη φυλακής τα αίτερα

9.21 cell (n) – small room in a prison where a prisoner lives
- All prisoners are locked in their cells at night. ♦ κελί

9.22 identity (n) – who someone is
- No one knows the identity of the man who saved the child from the fire. ♦ identify (v), identification (n) ♦ ιδέα είχω

9.23 siren (n) – very loud warning sound used on police cars, ambulances, fire engines, etc
- When I heard the police siren coming, I pulled my car over to the side of the road so that it could pass me. ♦ σερίνα

9.24 statement (n) – something spoken or written that provides information in a formal way
- Please read the statement and decide if it is true or false. ➢ state (v) ♦ δήλωση, φράση

9.25 not have a clue (idm) – have no idea, have no understanding (e.g., of what is happening or what needs to be done)
- She doesn’t have a clue how she is going to get herself out of the difficult situation. ♦ δεν έχει ιδέα

9.26 clue (n) – an object or piece of information that helps someone solve a crime
- The police are looking for clues that will lead them to the killer. ♦ ενδείξη, στοιχείο

9.27 evidence (n) – proof, sth that shows there is good reason to believe sth is true
- Police searched the crime scene for evidence that would lead them to the murderer. ♦ αποδεικτικά στοιχεία, ενδείξεις

9.28 fingerprint (n) – the mark left on a surface by a person’s finger
- The police found his fingerprints on the gun. ♦ δακτυλικό αποτύπωμα

9.29 motive (n) – reason for doing sth
- So far the detectives have not been able to find a clear motive for the murder. ♦ κίνητρο

9.30 proof (n) – a fact, piece of information that shows that something is definitely true
- There is no proof that John stole the money. ➢ prove (v) ♦ αποδείξη

9.31 scene (n) – the place where something happened
- The police found the thief’s gloves at the scene of the crime. ♦ τόνος, μέρος (ανα ουέβλε κάμα)

9.32 trace (n) – a sign
- They looked everywhere but there was no trace of him. He had disappeared. ➢ trace (v) ♦ ικνό, σημάδι

9.33 admit (v) – agree unwillingly that something is true or that sb else is right
- He admitted that he had been wrong and apologised. ➢ admission (n), admittedly (adv) ♦ παραδέχομαι

9.34 commit (v) – do something illegal or wrong
- He has committed a crime and he has to be punished for it. ♦ διαπράττω

9.35 confess (to) (v) – admit (to) sb sth, make known that you are guilty of sth
- He confessed to robbing the bank. ➢ confession (n) ♦ συνεργάζωμαι

9.36 cooperate (v) – help sb when they ask for your help
- It’s better to cooperate with the police if you know something about a crime. ➢ cooperation (n), cooperative (adj) ♦ συνεργάζομαι

9.37 deny (v) – say that something is not true
- The student denied cheating in the exam. ➢ denial (n) ♦ αρνούμαι κατηγορία, δεν παραδέχομαι

9.38 refuse (v) – say you will not do sth
- She refused to lend him money because she knew he would never pay her back. ➢ refusal (n) ♦ αρνούμαι (να κάνω κτ)

9.39 judge (n) – the person in a court who decides how the law should be applied
- The judge didn’t think there was enough evidence against her, so they let her go. ➢ judge (v), judgement (n) ♦ δικαστής

9.40 jury (n) – a group of people who are members of the public and have been chosen to listen to evidence in court and decide if someone is guilty or innocent
- The jury found him guilty of the crime. ➢ juror (n) ♦ ενορκοί, αύμα ενδόρκων

9.41 justice (n) – fairness in the way someone is treated
- If there’s any justice in this world, one day he’ll pay for all the pain he’s caused! ➢ just (adj) ➢ Opp: injustice ➢ δικαιοσύνη

9.42 lawyer (n) – sb who has studied law and is qualified to give legal advice and represent people in a court of law
- The lawyer proved to the jury that the defendant was innocent. ➢ law (n) ♦ δικηγόρος

9.43 witness (n) – sb who gives evidence in court, sb who is present at an event and sees sth
- The witness was asked to tell the court what he had seen on the night of the murder. ➢ witness (v) ♦ μάρτυρας

9.44 acquit (v) – declare in court that sb is not guilty
- The jury acquitted him because there was not enough evidence against him. ➢ acquittal (n) ♦ αδικώνω

9.45 convict (v) – (juries/judges) find sb guilty of a crime
- The evidence against him was so strong that the jury had no doubts about convicting him. ➢ conviction (n) ♦ καταδικάζω
**Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 146)**

9.46 **prosecute** (v) – bring criminal charges against someone in a court of law • *Sign in a department store: ‘Shoplifters will be prosecuted’. *Prosecutor (n), prosecution (n), prosecuting (adj) • οδηγώ κάποιον στη δικαιοσύνη, διώκω παικτικά

9.47 **sue** (v) – take legal action against sb, take sb to court • *He sued the newspaper for publishing stories about him that were not true.*

9.48 **break in** (phr v) – get into a building or a room by force • *Someone broke into our house last night and stole my laptop.* • Break-in (n) • διαρρηγνύω, κάνω διάρρηξη

9.49 **break out of (sth)** (phr v) – escape from (sth) • Police have finally captured the prisoners who broke out of jail last week. • δραπετεύω

9.50 **get away with** (phr v) – do sth and not be punished for it • *The teacher knows all the tricks, so no one gets away with cheating in her class.*

9.51 **get back** (phr v) – have in your possession again • *The police managed to get some of the stolen paintings back.* • άνακτώ, ξαναπαίρνω

9.52 **give away** (phr v) – betray sb/sth (e.g., a secret) by allowing information to become known • *The party is meant to be a surprise, so please don’t give it away.*

9.53 **give up** (phr v) – surrender, stop fighting • *He gave up after the second round. He knew he couldn’t win.*

9.54 **go after** (phr v) – pursue, chase • *When the boy grabbed her bag and ran down the street, she went after him.* • καταδιώκω, κυνηγώ

9.55 **keep back** (phr v) – not give some information, not tell sb sth that you know • *If you have any information about this man, please don’t keep it back.* • *It might help us find him.*

9.56 **let off** (phr v) – punish someone in a less serious way than expected, or not punish at all • *I’ll let you off this time but you must promise that you’ll never do it again.* • *τη χαρίζω σε κάποιον, δεν τιμωρώ κάποιον*

9.57 **look into** (phr v) – investigate, try to find out about • *The police are looking into the burglary, but they have not arrested anyone yet.*

**Prepositions 1 (page 146)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fear</td>
<td>for fear of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duty</td>
<td>on duty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excuse</td>
<td>excuse for (doing sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debt</td>
<td>in debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prison</td>
<td>in prison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increase</td>
<td>increase in sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be charged</td>
<td>be charged with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search</td>
<td>search for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question sb</td>
<td>question sb about sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentence sb</td>
<td>sentence sb to sth (time in prison)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Items 1-12**

Most of the choices that accompany this passage have already appeared in previous sections. If you need help with them, review the sections referred to below.

1. For B, C, and D, see Vocabulary 1: C and F.
2. For B and D, see Vocabulary 1: B and F.
3. For A, B, C, and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
4. For B, C, and D, see Vocabulary 1: B.
5. For A, B, and C, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
6. For A, B, and C, see Vocabulary 1: E. For B, see Vocabulary 2: C. Unit 8.
7. A, B, D For C, see Vocabulary 1: D.
8. B, C, D For A, see Prepositions 1.

9.58 **for fear of** (idm) – in case, because you are worried you will make sth bad happen • No one said anything during the exam for fear of being accused of cheating. ➞ fear (v, n) • μήπως, από φόβο μήπως

9.59 **be on duty** (v phr) – be working, be at work • When police officers are on duty, they must be on a constant lookout for danger. ➞ Opp: be off duty • έχω υπηρεσία

9.60 **be in debt** (v phr) – owe a lot of money • He was in debt and could not pay off his bank loan. ➞ debt and could not pay off his bank loan.

9.61 **increase (in)** (n) – a rise in amount or number • The increase in taxes has made the government very unpopular. ➞ increase (v) • αύξηση

9.62 **charge (with)** (v) – accuse or make a claim against sb • When the police had enough evidence, the suspect was arrested and charged with murder. ➞ κατηγορώ κάποιον για κάτι

9.63 **sentence (to)** (v) – say officially in a court of law what someone’s punishment will be • She was sentenced to two years in prison. ➞ sentence (n) • καταδικάζω, επιβάλλω ποινή

---

**Use of English Practice 1 (page 147)**

9.64 **matter** (n) – something that needs to be dealt with • Let’s discuss the matter at next week’s meeting. ➞ θέμα, ζήτημα

9.65 **search for** (phr v) – look for, pursue • The police are still searching for the murder weapon. ➞ search (n) • ψάχνω, κυνηγώ

9.66 **story** (n) – tale • The film is a classic story in which a homeless man gets a job as a mailroom employee and then works his way up to become managing director of a huge company. ➞ ιστορία

9.67 **description** (n) – piece of writing or sth sb says that describes what sth/sb says is like by giving details • The witness gave a detailed description of the suspect to the artist. ➞ describe (v), descriptive (adj), descriptively (adv) • περιγραφή

9.68 **account** (n) – report of sth that has happened • His account of what happened at the party was very different to hers. ➞ αφήνω, περιγράφω

9.69 **fright** (n) – feeling you have when sth frightens you • I got a fright when the telephone rang in the middle of the night. ➞ frighten (v) • τρομάρα, φόβος

9.70 **horror** (n) – strong feeling of shock and fear • We looked on in horror as the man fell off his motorbike. ➞ horrify (v), horrific (adj) • τρόμος, φρίκη

9.71 **terror** (n) – extreme fear • People ran out of the burning building in terror. ➞ terrorise (v), terrorist (n), terrorism (n) • τρόμος

9.72 **guide** (v) – influence • Don’t be guided by what other people say. Use your own judgement. ➞ guidance (n) • (καθοδηγώ, επηρεάζω

9.73 **lead to** (phr v) – result in, cause • Smoking may lead to serious heart and breathing problems. ➞ οδηγώ σε, καταλήγω σε

9.74 **release** (v) – set free, allow to leave a place • They had no evidence against her, so she was released. ➞ release (n) • αφίνω ελεύθερο, αποφυλακίζω

9.75 **obstruct** (v) – get in the way of, stop something from happening • Such old-fashioned ideas obstruct progress, I think. ➞ obstruction (n), obstructive (adj) • εμποδίζω

9.76 **prevent** (v) – stop sth from happening • The quick-thinking driver prevented an accident by slamming on his brakes. ➞ αποφεύγω, εμποδίζω κτ. να συμβεί

9.77 **jail** (n) – prison • He was sent to jail for robbing a bank. ➞ jailer (n), jail (v) • φυλακή

9.78 **guard** (n) – sb whose job is to watch a prisoner and stop him/her from escaping • The guard locked the cell and walked away. ➞ guard (v) • φυλάξω
Vocabulary 2 (page 150)

A (page 150)

9.79 **burgle** (v) – enter a house, flat, etc by force and steal things. • His house was burgled and many valuable things were stolen. ➞ burglary (n), burglar (n) ➝ κάνω διάρρηξη

9.80 **loot** (v) – steal and cause widespread damage • During the unrest in Los Angeles several years ago, rioters looted shops, stealing and destroying whatever they could get their hands on. ➞ looter (n), looting (n), looted (adj) ➝ ληστεύω

9.81 **mug** (v) – to attack sb and steal their money in a public place • He had his watch and money stolen when he was mugged as he walked home through the park. ➞ mugging (n), mugger (n) ➝ αποθέματα και ήπιες νομίσματα

9.82 **rob** (v) – steal money or other things • Robbing a bank is a very serious crime. ➞ robbery (n), robber (n) ➝ αποθέματα

9.83 **steal** (v) – take sth that belongs to sb else • He stole some money from his mother’s purse when she was in the other room. ➝ κλέβω

9.84 **vandalise** (v) – damage sth deliberately (especially public property) • The boys vandalised all the benches in the park, so there wasn’t anywhere to sit down anymore. ➞ vandal (n), vandalism (n) ➝ διαρρήξεις βανδαλισμούς

B (page 150)

9.85 **blackmail** (v) – tell sb that you will do sth bad to them or tell secrets about them if they don’t give you money. • He blackmailed her by saying that if she didn’t give him money he would tell the police that she was a thief. ➞ blackmail (n) ➝ διαφυλάσσω

9.86 **bribe** (v) – pay sb money to do sth dishonest • He bribed the security guard to let him through the gate. ➞ bribery (n), bribe (n) ➝ δωροδοκώ

9.87 **cheat** (v) – act dishonestly (e.g., in a test or while playing a game) in order to gain an advantage • You mustn’t cheat during a test. / We realised he had been cheating when we saw that he had several cards hidden in his shirt sleeve. ➞ cheat (n), cheating (n, adj) ➝ (σε εξετάσεις) αντιγράφω, (στα χαρτιά) κλέβω

9.88 **embezzle** (v) – take (money) illegally and use it for one’s own purposes • The accountant escaped to Brazil and bought a villa with money that he had embezzled from the company. ➞ embezzlement (n), embezzler (n), embezzled (adj) ➝ καταχρώμαι, αφετερίζομαι

9.89 **hack** (into) (v) – find a way to get information from sb else’s computer without permission • He hacked into the bank’s computer system and started transferring money out of the accounts.

C (page 150)

9.90 **smuggle** (v) – take sth illegally from one country to another; or take sth somewhere where it is not allowed • He smuggled the drugs into the country in jars of coffee. ➞ smuggler (n), smuggling (n) ➝ κλέβω, χαματζώ, περνώ κατακτής

9.91 **arson** (n) – the crime of setting fire to buildings, property, etc. • The police have determined that the cause of the fire was arson, not an explosion. ➞ arsonist (n) ➝ εμπρησμός

9.92 **burglary** (n) – the crime of breaking into a place and stealing sth • Police are concerned about the increasing number of burglaries in the area. ➞ burglar (n) ➝ διάρρηξη

9.93 **fraud** (n) – the crime of tricking or deceiving a person or an organisation in order to get money • He was charged with fraud and arrested for selling shares in a non-existent company. ➞ fraudulent (adj), fraudulently (adv) ➝ απαγωγή

9.94 **hijack** (n) – the crime of taking control of a plane, boat, etc, in order to force it to go to a new destination or to demand sth from a government in return for the safety of those on board. • During the hijack, the terrorists threatened to kill everyone on board if their demands were not met. ➞ hijacker (n), hijacking (n), hijack (v) ➝ (αερο)πειρατεία

9.95 **kidnap** (n) – the crime of taking a person by force and demanding money for their safe return • The kidnap of the bank manager was followed by a demand from the kidnappers of 1 million euros for his safe return. ➞ kidnapping (n), kidnap (v), kidnapper (n) ➝ απάτη

9.96 **theft** (n) – the crime of stealing • He was arrested for theft. ➞ thief (n) ➝ κλέβω

D (page 150)

9.97 **receive** (v) – be given or presented with sth, get • The couple received dozens of wedding gifts from their family and friends. ➞ receipt (n), reception (n) ➝ παράγω, παίρνω

9.98 **recover** (v) – find or get back sth that has been lost or stolen • They recovered the stolen goods from the thief’s house. ➞ recovery (n) ➝ περιποίηση

9.99 **release** (v) – let go, allow to leave • Police had to release the suspect because there wasn’t enough evidence to hold him. ➞ release (n), released (adj) ➝ (απο)φεύγω, επεμβέρνω, αφήνω κι να φύγει
counterfeit (adj) – (usually money) fake, made as a copy in order to trick sb • Bank clerks are trained to recognise paper money that is counterfeit. ➢ counterfeit (n), counterfeiting (n), counterfeit (v) ➢ counterfeit

fake (adj) – made as a copy in order to trick sb • The fake Picasso was an exact copy of the original. ➢ fake (n) ➢ κλεμμένος, μηταστάσιμος

the journey ➢ unharmed

 HMSO

Having a car accident ➢ unharmed

towards ➢ unharmed

be on duty (v phr) – be working, be at work • When police officers are on duty, they must be on a constant lookout for danger. ➢ Opp: be off duty ➢ έχω γρήγορα

government releases its political prisoners. ➢ πράκτορα

be on patrol (prep phr) – who keep watch over an area by walking or driving around at regular intervals. • The soldiers on patrol were relieved to find no sign of the enemy in the area. ➢ patrol (n, v) ➢ ορίζω περιπολία

detect (v) ➢ κατακεραυνών

detective (n) – sb whose job is to prevent crime • The detective secretly photographed the suspicious man as he entered the building. ➢ detect (v) ➢ ντετέκτιβ, ιδιωτικός αστυνομικός

shoplifter (n) – a person who takes things from a shop without paying for them • The shoplifter was taken to the police station, where he admitted that he had stolen the goods. ➢ shoplift (v), shoplifting (n) ➢ κλέωνισμός που κλέβει προϊόντα από κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

guilty (adj) – responsible for doing sth bad or wrong • The guilty person will be found and sent to prison for a long time. ➢ guilt (n), guiltily (adv). Opp: innocent ➢ ευθύνομος

H:

agent (n) – sb who works for a government or police department to find out secret information • He was a secret agent working in a foreign country, trying to find out information about their armed forces. ➢ πράκτορα

detective (n) ➢ κατακεραυνών

security guard (n) – sb whose job is to guard a building or a van carrying money • After a series of bank robberies, some banks have security guards. ➢ φρουρός ασφαλείας

hostage (n) – person who is taken prisoner by sb who threatens to harm him/her unless certain demands are met by others • The terrorists say they will not release the hostages unless the government releases its political prisoners. ➢ όμηρος

shoplifter (n) ➢ κλέωνισμός που κλέβει προϊόντα από κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

be on duty (v phr) ➢ κατακεραυνών

safe and sound (idm) ➢ ασφάλεια

security (n) ➢ ασφάλεια

9.100 report (v) ➢ αναφέρω, δίνω

9.107 on patrol ➢ ασφαλεία

9.108 safe and sound ➢ ασφαλεία

9.109 security ➢ ασφαλεία

9.101 counterfeit (adj) ➢ ασφαλεία

9.102 fake (adj) ➢ ασφαλεία

9.103 false (adj) ➢ ασφαλεία

9.104 forgery (n) ➢ ασφαλεία

9.105 plain clothes ➢ ασφαλεία

9.106 be on duty (v phr) ➢ ασφαλεία

9.108 safe and sound ➢ ασφαλεία

9.109 security (n) ➢ ασφαλεία

9.110 watch (n) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.111 guilty (adj) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.112 persistent (adj) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.113 serious (adj) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.114 suspicious (adj) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.115 agent (n) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.116 detective (n) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.117 security guard (n) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.118 hostage (n) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.119 pickpocket (n) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας

9.120 shoplifter (n) ➢ κατάστημα εν ώρα λειτουργίας
Unit 9

Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 152)

9.121 back (sb) up (phr v) – support (sb) • John didn’t know if any of his colleagues would back him up if he complained to his manager about their working conditions. ➢ backup (n) υποστήριξη

9.122 do (sb) out of (sth) (phr v) – unfairly prevent sb from getting/having sth, deprive sb of sth that is rightfully theirs • Through a legal technicality, her brother managed to do her out of her inheritance; she got nothing when her father died. ➢ στερώ κτ από κτ άδικα

9.123 keep down (phr v) – not raise, keep at a low level (e.g., prices, crime) • Recognising that the economy is slow, shops are trying to stimulate business by keeping their prices down. ➢ δεν ανεβάζω κτ κρατώ κτ χαμηλό (π.χ., τιμές)

9.124 pay back (phr v) – take revenge, do sth bad to sb who has done sth bad to you • What he did was wrong, but if you try to pay him back by hurting him, you’ll go to jail! ➢ payback (n) εκδικούμαι

9.125 pick up (phr v) – arrest, take into custody • The police picked him up in the city centre after they got a call from a member of the public who recognised his face from a ‘wanted’ poster. ➢ απολήμβανα, πίναν έναν καταζητούμενο

9.126 put away (phr v) – put in prison • That evil man should be put away for life and never released. ➢ κλείνω μέσα (στη φυλακή)

9.127 see through (phr v) – not be fooled by (lies) • Although he believed her at first, he soon saw through her lies. ➢ δεν ξεγελαίημαι από κάποιον ή κάτι

9.128 set back (phr v) – make progress slower • When the football player was sent off, it really set the team back in their bid to win the match. ➢ setback (n) παρεμποδίζω, ανακόπτω

9.129 take in (phr v) – trick, deceive • Can’t you see he’s trying to take you in with his clever lies? ➢ ξεγελάω, εξαπατώ

9.130 think out (phr v) – plan carefully • Have you really thought this out carefully? You can always change your mind. ➢ μελετώ προσεχτικά

Prepositions 2 (page 152)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trouble</td>
<td>be in trouble with sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover</td>
<td>under cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a request</td>
<td>make a request for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take control</td>
<td>take control of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be suspicious</td>
<td>be suspicious of sth/stb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behalf</td>
<td>on behalf of sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>help sb with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provide</td>
<td>provide sb with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different point of view</td>
<td>from a different point of view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be (not) guilty</td>
<td>be (not) guilty of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooperate</td>
<td>cooperate with sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supply</td>
<td>supply sb with sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

9.131 **be in trouble with** (idm) – be in a situation where sb (usually in authority) is angry with you ● *He is in trouble with the police again.*

9.132 **under cover** (prep phr) – secretly involved in gathering information (e.g., for the police, government, or military) ● *The police officer is working under cover on an important drug-smuggling case, so he hasn’t contacted his family in months.* ➔ *undercover (adj)*

9.133 **be in danger** (v phr) – be at risk, be exposed to harm or injury ● *If I thought my life would be in danger, I never would have gone skiing.* ➔ *διακινδυνεύω, είμαι εκτεθειμένος σε κίνδυνο*

9.134 **take control (of sth/sb)** (v phr) – gain a strong hold or influence on sth/sb ● *The powerful invading army managed to take control of the capital with little resistance from the government’s poorly equipped troops.*

9.135 **suspicious (of)** (adj) – having or showing distrust ● *Why are you suspicious of Tom? Don’t you trust anyone? ➔ suspicion (n), suspect (n, v), suspiciously (adv)*

9.136 **on behalf of** (prep phr) – as sb’s representative ● *On behalf of the entire staff, I’d like to give you this gift as a token of our esteem.* ➔ *εκ μέρους κάποιου*

9.137 **supply (sb with)** (v) – provide sth that is needed ● *The company supplies offices with cleaning staff.* ➔ *παρέχω, προμηθεύω, εφοδιάζω*

9.138 **hit the roof** (idm) – (informal) become extremely angry ● *His mother hit the roof when he came in at 4 a.m.*

9.139 **doesn’t hold water** (idm) – can’t be true ● *Your account of what happened doesn’t hold water.* ➔ *δεν στέκει, δεν αντέχει σε κριτική*

9.140 **take the law into your own hands** (idm) – hand out your own punishment ● *When his family was murdered, he took the law into his own hands and went after the killer on his own.* ➔ *παίρνω τον έλεγχο, αναλαμβάνω, καταλαμβάνω*

9.141 **keep the lid on** (idm) – not reveal any facts about ● *Please keep the lid on the fact that John is leaving because we don’t want anyone to know until he’s gone.* ➔ *να είσαι εκείνος, να αποδείξεις κριτική*

9.142 **carry the can** (idm) – take the blame alone ● *When her son killed his friend, she carried the can for him and pretended she had done it.* ➔ *αναλαμβάνω εξ ολοκλήρου την ευθύνη, πάνω κάτι επάνω μου*

9.143 **keep your nose clean** (idm) – stay out of trouble ● *You’d better keep your nose clean or you’ll end up in jail.* ➔ *μην χώνεις τη μύτη σου, μην ανακατεύσεις*

9.134 **take control (of sth/sb)** (v phr) – gain a strong hold or influence on sth/sb ● *The powerful invading army managed to take control of the capital with little resistance from the government’s poorly equipped troops.*

**Nouns from phrasal verbs**

9.144 **backup** (n) – sb/sth which provides support when needed ● *The policeman was on his own so when he saw a gunman going into a bank, he called for backup.*

9.145 **break-in** (n) – the act of entering a building using force ● *There was a break-in at the office last night. All the computers were stolen.*

9.146 **breakout** (n) – an escape from prison ● *Ten prisoners escaped during the breakout.*

9.147 **make one’s getaway** (v phr) – escape, get away ● *The bank robbers made their getaway in a dark blue Honda Civic.*

9.148 **giveaway** (n) – sth that makes it easy for you to guess sth ● *They said that they hadn’t been to the beach, but the sand on their shoes was a giveaway.*

9.149 **setback** (n) – an event or circumstance that delays or blocks progress ● *The scandal proved to be a major setback in his political career.*

---

**English in Use (page 156)**

**Idioms**

9.138 **hit the roof** (idm) – (informal) become extremely angry ● *His mother hit the roof when he came in at 4 a.m.*

9.139 **doesn’t hold water** (idm) – can’t be true ● *Your account of what happened doesn’t hold water.*

9.140 **take the law into your own hands** (idm) – hand out your own punishment ● *When his family was murdered, he took the law into his own hands and went after the killer on his own.*

9.141 **keep the lid on** (idm) – not reveal any facts about ● *Please keep the lid on the fact that John is leaving because we don’t want anyone to know until he’s gone.*

9.142 **carry the can** (idm) – take the blame alone ● *When her son killed his friend, she carried the can for him and pretended she had done it.*

9.143 **keep your nose clean** (idm) – stay out of trouble ● *You’d better keep your nose clean or you’ll end up in jail.*

**Nouns from phrasal verbs**

9.144 **backup** (n) – sb/sth which provides support when needed ● *The policeman was on his own so when he saw a gunman going into a bank, he called for backup.*

9.145 **break-in** (n) – the act of entering a building using force ● *There was a break-in at the office last night. All the computers were stolen.*

9.146 **breakout** (n) – an escape from prison ● *Ten prisoners escaped during the breakout.*

9.147 **make one’s getaway** (v phr) – escape, get away ● *The bank robbers made their getaway in a dark blue Honda Civic.*

9.148 **giveaway** (n) – sth that makes it easy for you to guess sth ● *They said that they hadn’t been to the beach, but the sand on their shoes was a giveaway.*

9.149 **setback** (n) – an event or circumstance that delays or blocks progress ● *The scandal proved to be a major setback in his political career.*
Reported Speech

A (page 166)

10.01 charge extra (v phr) – ask for an additional amount of money as payment for something. Taxi fares are not expensive during the day, but they charge extra after midnight.

10.02 earn (v) – get money by working. He earns a lot of money as a lawyer.

10.03 invest in (phr v) – put money into something to achieve a profit. He has invested a lot of money in a new business. I hope it succeeds.

10.04 save money (v phr) – avoid wasting money. I save money by walking rather than driving to work.

10.05 tip (v) – give a small amount of money to someone as a gift for doing a service. People sometimes tip the waiter 10% of the bill.

B (page 166)

10.06 exchange (v) – replace one thing with another thing. I exchanged the T-shirt I bought yesterday for a larger one.

10.07 fit (v) – be the correct size. This jacket doesn’t fit me. Can you get me a bigger size, please?

10.08 match (v) – be of a similar colour. This tie matches your new shirt.

10.09 suit (v) – look good on/in. I think the red shirt suits me better than the green one.

10.10 trend (n) – the way something progresses, develops in general. There seems to be a growing trend towards healthy eating.

C (page 166)

10.11 purchase (n) – the act of buying something; also, the thing which is bought. She is careful and never rushes into the purchase of expensive items like cars or computers.

10.12 quality (n) – how good or bad something is.

10.13 quantity (n) – amount.

10.14 sample (n) – a little amount of something which allows sb to find out what it is like. The photographer showed me samples of his work.

10.15 voucher (n) – a printed piece of paper that someone can use instead of money to pay for something. The airline gave us free lunch vouchers when our flight was delayed for six hours.

D (page 166)

10.16 crack (n) – a small thin line or break on the surface of something. After the earthquake, there was a crack in one of the walls of our house.

10.17 defect (n) – fault, imperfection. The computer had a defect so I took it back to the shop.

10.18 scratch (n) – a line or mark made by rubbing with something pointed. She got a nasty scratch on her cheek when she tried to pick up a cat.

10.19 stain (n) – a mark on something (e.g. cloth or clothing) that is difficult or impossible to remove. There was a large stain on his tie where he’d dropped some ketchup.

10.20 wear and tear (n phr) – damage due to frequent use. Their furniture was new when they married, but after fifteen years, it’s beginning to show wear and tear.

E (page 166)

10.21 bargain (n) – a good buy (i.e., something bought at a good price). If you’re patient, you can find some great bargains at the street market.

10.22 bill (n) – a written statement of money owed for goods or services. Our electricity bill this month came to £50.
| 10.23 | **discount** (n) – amount of money that is taken off the original price • She bought the dress at a 20% discount. / The shop is closing so everything is being sold at a discount. ➢ discount (v), discounted (adj) ❖ ἐκπτώση. |
| 10.24 | **loan** (n) – an amount of money that someone borrows. • They took out a bank loan to buy a new house. ➢ loan (v) ➢ δάνειο |
| 10.25 | **offer** (n) – an advertised reduced price in a shop • There’s a special offer on ice cream at the supermarket this week; it’s half price until Friday. ❖ προσφορά |
| 10.26 | **profit** (n) – money that is gained by selling something for more than it originally cost • He made a profit when he sold his bike for more than he paid for it. ➢ profit (v), profitable (adj), profitably (adv) ❖ κέρδος |
| 10.27 | **receipt** (n) – piece of paper given as proof of buying something ➢ if you want to return the shirt you bought, you’ll need the receipt to prove when you bought it. ➢ receive (v) ➢ απόδειξη |

**F (page 167)**

| 10.28 | **aisle** (n) – passage between shelves of products in a supermarket • You’ll find cornflakes and other cereals in the second aisle on the right. ❖ διάδρομος |
| 10.29 | **branch** (n) – local office or store that is part of a larger organisation • She works for a small branch of a large insurance company whose main offices are located in London. ➢ υποκατάστημα, παράρτημα |
| 10.30 | **chain** (n) – a number of shops, hotels, etc, under the same ownership or management • That hotel is part of a well-known chain of hotels. ➢ αλυσίδα ➢ διάδρομος ➢ χειροκίνητος |
| 10.31 | **counter** (n) – table in a shop, bank, etc, where customers are served ➢ I went to the counter to pay for my new shoes. ➢ πάγκος πωλήσεως |
| 10.32 | **department** (n) – part of a company, organisation, shop, university, etc. • Greg works in the sales department and his friend Marina works in the personnel department. ➢ τμήμα (π.χ. επιχειρήσεως). |
| 10.33 | **display** (n) – public show ➢ There was a display of model cars in his bedroom. ➢ display (v) ➢ (αντικείμενα σε) επίδειξη |

**G (page 167)**

| 10.34 | **brand** (n) – a make of a product that is produced by a particular company • What brand of soap do you use? ➢ μάρκα, φήμα |
| 10.35 | **brochure** (n) – a magazine or thin book with pictures that gives information about products or a service • We’ve spent hours looking at travel brochures, trying to decide where to go. ❖ διαφημιστικό φυλλάδιο, μπροστινά |

| 10.36 | **label** (n) – a piece of card, plastic or material that gives information about something it is on • Look at the label on the bottle and read the instructions carefully. ➢ label (v) ➢ ετίκετα ➢ designer label = επώνυμο φυλλάδιο |
| 10.37 | **leaflet** (n) – a piece of printed paper containing information or advertising sth • They stood outside the school giving out leaflets on Internet crime. ❖ φυλλάδιο |
| 10.38 | **make** (n) – (of products) brand, type (from a particular manufacturer) • I prefer this particular make of watch. ➢ μάρκα, κατασκευή |
| 10.39 | **price tag** (n) – a small piece of card or paper that shows how much something costs • You can’t buy this jacket! Look at the price tag; it costs 500 euros! ➢ ετίκετα με την τιμή πώλησης |

**Similar but different:** Make, brand – Brand and make have similar meanings, but brand is usually used for inexpensive things (e.g. What brand of washing up liquid do you prefer?). Make is usually used for more expensive products (e.g. This make of television is the best.)

**H (page 167)**

| 10.40 | **small change** (n phr) – coins (e.g., pennies, cents) ➢ No wonder your wallet is so heavy. It’s full of pennies, and other small change. ➢ change (v) ➢ ψήλα |
| 10.41 | **cost** (n) – the amount of money needed for buying, doing or producing something. • His parents give him 300 euros a month to cover the cost of travelling to college every day. ➢ κόστος |
| 10.42 | **price** (n) – the amount of money needed to buy a particular thing ➢ I like this table. Let’s ask the price. ➢ τιμή |
| 10.43 | **value** (n) – 1) the importance or usefulness of sth ➢ Her degree in archaeology is of little value to her because she wants to be a nurse. 2) the possible amount of money that something can be sold for • Their improvements to the house increased its value. ➢ αξία |
| 10.44 | **be worth** (v phr) – to have a value in money ➢ The necklace is worth two thousand pounds. The ring is worth less. ➢ έχει αξία, αξίζει |

**Similar but different:** Cost, price – We use price to talk about the amount of money needed to buy a particular thing (e.g. What is the price of this lamp?). We use cost to talk about the amount of money needed for general things, for services or for a number of things (e.g. The total cost of having our new garage door installed was double what we had originally estimated.)
Similar but different: **value, worth** – Value and worth have similar meanings but worth is more common after to be and after words for amounts of something. (e.g. It’s worth more than you can imagine. / Two hundred pounds’ worth of jewellery was stolen.) As a noun, worth means the same as value but is more old-fashioned.

### Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 168)

10.45 **come down** (phr v) – (for products) become lower in price • Computers have really come down in price in the last few years; almost everyone can afford one now. ❖ πέφτει η τιμή

10.46 **count up** (phr v) – find the total amount (of money) • The boy counted up his pocket money and put it in his piggy bank. ❖ αθροίζω

10.47 **cross out** (phr v) – draw a line through something you have written • He crossed out the last sentence in his essay and wrote down another one instead. ❖ διαγράφω

10.48 **cut back** (phr v) – reduce, lessen sth • He’s trying to lose weight so has cut back on the amount of food he eats. ❖ περικόπτω, μειώνω

10.49 **draw out** (phr v) – take money from (a bank account) • He drew out some cash on Friday so that he had some money for the weekend. ❖ κάνω ανάληψη

10.50 **feel like** (phr v) – be in the mood to do sth • She didn’t feel like going to the party because she had a bad headache. ❖ έχω διάθεση για κτ

10.51 **give out** (phr v) – distribute, hand out • The teacher gave out exam papers to her students. ❖ διανέμω

10.52 **go on** (phr v) – be spent on • Most of their money went on rent. ❖ πηγαίνω για (σχετικά με κρητικό ποσό), ξοδεύομαι

10.53 **go with** (phr v) – match • Sorry, but that striped tie definitely does not go with your striped shirt. ❖ ταιριάζω

10.54 **live on** (phr v) – use to survive • He lives on a small pension. ❖ ζω με, έχω ως πόρους διαβίωσης

### Prepositions 1 (page 168)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>on Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheque</td>
<td>by cheque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash</td>
<td>in cash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no extra cost</td>
<td>at no extra cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend money</td>
<td>spend money on sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale</td>
<td>on sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good price</td>
<td>at a good price</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>pay for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shelf</td>
<td>on the shelf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit</td>
<td>on credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debt</td>
<td>in debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum/money</td>
<td>sum of money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>tell sb about sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock</td>
<td>knock sth off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.55 buy on credit (idm) – delay payment of goods (eg, by using a credit card) • Many people buy on credit simply to avoid having to carry large amounts of cash which may be stolen. ➔ αγοράζω με πίστωση
10.56 in debt (prep phr) – owing money • He is heavily in debt and can’t pay back the money he owes. ➔ χρεωμένος

Use of English Practice 1 (page 169)

Items 1-12
1 B, C For A and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
10.58 take off (phr v) – (clothes) remove • Take off your coat. You must be hot. ➔ βγάζω
10.59 put off (phr v) – discourage sb from doing sth, cause sb to lose enthusiasm for sth • A rude sales assistant put him off shopping at the famous department store; he refuses to shop there anymore. ➔ αποτρέπω, πτοώ, αποθαρρύνω
2 For B and C, see Vocabulary 1: C.
3 C For A and B, see Vocabulary 1: B.
10.60 fetch (v) – (informal) bring • Please fetch me my glasses; they’re upstairs. ➔ φέρνω, κουβαλάω
Note: If you say sb/sth looks ‘fetching’, you mean they look nice, pleasant, attractive.
4 C For A, B and D, see Vocabulary 1: C and G.
10.61 ticket (n) – printed piece of paper or card to show you have paid for entrance to a bus, cinema, etc • You get the tickets and I’ll get the popcorn. ➔ εισιτήριο
5 For A, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: A.
6 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: D.
7 D For A and B, see Vocabulary 1: F.
10.62 bench (n) – long wooden seat, usually used outdoors • They sat on a park bench when they got tired. ➔ παγκάκι
8 A For B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: E.
10.63 decrease (n) – amount by which sth becomes less • We have had a big decrease in sales over the last six months: people are not buying as many clothes as before. ➔ decrease (v) ➔ μείωση, ελάττωση
9 For A, see Phrasal Verbs 1. For D, see Vocabulary 1: B.
10 For B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: E and G..
11 A, B, C For D, see Vocabulary 1: B.
10.64 reverse (v) – (fig) turn around, undo the effect of; (lit) go/cause to go in the opposite direction • (fig) The government is trying to reverse unemployment by creating new jobs. / (lit) He carefully reversed the car out of the garage and backed out of the driveway. ➔ reversal (n), reverse (n), in reverse (prep phr) ➔ αντιστρέφω
10.65 swap (v) – (informal) exchange, give sth away and receive sth in its place • I swapped my red belt for her black one. ➔ swap (n) ➔ ανταλλάσσω
10.66 alter (v) – change, make sth/sb become different • Her new hairstyle is great; it totally alters her appearance. ➔ alteration (n), altered (adj) ➔ μετατρέπω, αλλάζω, τροποποιώ
12 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: H.

Vocabulary 2 (page 172)

A (page 172)
10.67 credit card (n) – a plastic card that is used to buy things and pay later • They don’t accept credit cards. You’ll have to pay in cash. ➔ πιστωτική κάρτα
10.68 delivery (n) – act of taking sth to sb • Our local supermarket does all its deliveries in the morning so make sure you are at home between 8am and 12 noon. ➔ deliver (v) ➔ διανυσμ, παράδοση
10.69 guarantee (n) – written promise to replace or repair a product if it has a problem within a period of time after you buy it • The hair dryer comes with a three-year guarantee. ➔ εγγύηση
10.70 signature (n) – a person’s name written by that person in a characteristic way, often used on a document to show that the person agrees with it • How do you know that the signature on the cheque is his? ➔ sign (v) ➔ υπογραφή
B (page 172)

10.71 affordable (adj) – reasonably priced • They offer high quality products at affordable prices. ➞ afford (v)

10.72 economical (adj) – inexpensive to buy, use or operate • Small cars are more economical than larger cars. (ie, cheaper to buy and to use) ➞ economy (n), economise (v) ❖ øικονομικός, οικονομικός

10.73 priceless (adj) – extremely valuable or important • Those photographs are a priceless reminder of the wonderful time we had on our holiday. / This huge diamond is priceless. ➞ price (n) ❖ αξιοποιητικός, πολύτιμος

10.74 pricey (adj) – (informal) expensive • The shoes in that shop are a bit pricey. ➞ ακριβός

10.75 special offer (n phr) – reduction of the price of something in a shop for a short time • These cameras are on special offer until the end of the week. ➞ ειδική προσφορά

10.76 worthless (adj) – having no real value or use • He never pays anyone back, so his promise to give you the money in a month is worthless. / The painting isn’t really a Picasso, so it’s worthless. ➞ worthless (n), worthless (adv) ❖ αξιόλογος, αξιόποιητος

10.77 cash (n) – money (i.e., coins and notes as opposed to cheques or credit cards) • Many people use credit cards nowadays so they don’t have to carry cash with them. ➞ cash (v) ❖ μετρητά, χρήμα

10.78 bar code (n) – a block of thin and thick lines on a product in shop that allows a scanner to read how much it costs. • Bar codes on supermarket products make paying for your shopping much faster. ➞ χωρίς

10.79 contents (n) – all the things inside something • She emptied the contents of her briefcase onto the table. ➞ contain (v) ❖ περιεχόμενο

10.80 limit (n) – point or level beyond which sth may not extend or go beyond • The speed limit in town is 30 mph. ➞ όριο

10.81 loyalty (n) – the quality of being supportive and faithful • We’ve been friends for almost 20 years, so I’m not questioning your loyalty. ➞ loyal (adj), loyally (adv) ❖ ορίο

C (page 172)

10.82 checkout (n) – (supermarket) counter where you pay for your shopping • She avoids the supermarket on Saturdays as the lines at the checkout are always very long. ➞ check out (phr v) ❖ ταμείο

10.83 item (n) – one thing from a group or a list • Each item in this exercise has one mark.

10.84 refund (n) – the return of money • If you are not happy with the product, you can always ask for a full refund. ➞ refund (v) ❖ επιστροφή χρήματος

10.85 till (n) – the money drawer in a cash register • Cashiers are held personally responsible for any shortages in their tills. ➞ ταμείο

10.86 window shopping (n phr) – the act of looking at things in shop windows without intending to buy anything • We didn’t have any money to spend when we went to London, but we enjoyed window shopping. ➞ βόηθησες βιτρίνες

D (page 172)

10.87 accountant (n) – someone whose job is to keep a record of or check money that has been received and has been spent • His accountant told him to stop spending so much money. ➞ χαρτοπιστωτής

10.88 cashier (n) – a person in a shop or a bank whose job is to take money • She asked the cashier if she could pay by credit card. ➞ ταμείο

10.89 consumer (n) – sb who buys and uses goods or services • It’s a product that appeals to a wide range of consumers. ➞ καταναλωτής

10.90 designer (n) – sb whose job is to make patterns and plans for new styles of clothes, furniture, etc • The fashion designer chose ten models to wear his new designs in the fashion show. ➞ σχεδιαστής

10.91 stockbroker (n) – sb who buys and sells stocks and shares (parts of companies) for people who invest money on the stock exchange • Afraid that the country was headed for a long-term economic crisis, he called his stockbroker and told him to sell all his stocks. ➞ χρηματιστής

E (page 172)

10.92 cheque (n) – a piece of paper that is printed by a bank and can be used to pay for things • I wrote out a cheque for 2,000 pounds and gave it to the car salesman. ➞ επιταγή, ταμείο

10.93 currency (n) – money used in a particular country or area • Most of the countries in the European Union have adopted the euro as their common currency. ➞ νόμισμα, συναλλαγματικό

10.94 deposit (n) – sum of money paid in advance against a larger amount that will be paid later • To book your vacation, you’ll need to pay a 10% deposit. The rest is due one month before you travel. ➞ deposit (v) ➞ προκαταβολή

10.95 instalment (n) – one of a series of payments that you make until you have paid all the money you owe
I just have to pay one more instalment and then I will have paid the full amount for the sofa. 10.96 savings (n) – all the money that you have kept and not spent 10.97 withdrawal (n) – the act of removing money from a bank account 10.98 account (n) – a written record showing the total amount of money that a bank customer has in the bank 10.99 budget (n) – plan of how available money will be spent over a period of time 10.100 expenses (n) – the money that needs to be spent in order to do something 10.101 income (n) – money earned over a period of time (e.g. from a job or investments) 10.102 interest (n) – money charged or paid for allowing sb to make use of one’s money 10.103 salary (n) – the money that employees are paid for doing their job 10.104 tax (n) – amount of money that must be paid to the government (e.g., by individuals or businesses) 10.105 garment (n) – a piece of clothing (a more formal word than clothes) 10.106 logo (n) – a design or way of writing words that represents a particular company

Phrasal verbs 2 (page 174)

10.107 make out (a cheque) (phr v) – write a cheque 10.108 pay off (phr v) – give back all the money that is owed 10.109 pick up (phr v) – improve, gain strength 10.110 put by (phr v) – (money) save 10.111 show up (phr v) – appear, be obvious or noticeable
### Prepositions 2 (page 174)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>complain</td>
<td>complain to sb about sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td>in the window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>come in a size/colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fashion</td>
<td>in fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>short of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be made</td>
<td>be made in (a country)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>start from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offer</td>
<td>on offer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale</td>
<td>for sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advance</td>
<td>in advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stock</td>
<td>in stock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strength</td>
<td>go from strength to strength</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

10.116 come in (v phr) – is available in (different sizes, colours, etc)
- This dress also comes in red or grey.

10.117 in fashion (phr) – fashionable
- Short skirts are in fashion at the moment.

10.118 be short of (v phr) – not have enough of sth
- She was short of sugar and eggs so she couldn’t make a cake.

10.119 on offer (phr) – available
- They gave us a list of the services on offer.

10.120 in advance (prep phr) – before some other action or event
- some people plan their holidays months in advance, while others decide at the last moment.

10.121 in stock (idm) – (of goods in a shop or warehouse) available for purchase
- Before going to the shop, he called to ensure the CD he wanted was in stock.

10.122 go from strength to strength (phr) – get better and better
- Since she took over as manager, the company has gone from strength to strength.

### English in Use (page 178)

#### Similes

10.123 as good as gold (idm) – very well-behaved
- The new teacher had no problems with the children. In fact, she said that they were as good as gold.

10.124 as happy as a pig in muck (idm) – very happy
- When he’s watching football on Sunday afternoon, he’s as happy as a pig in muck.

10.125 as light as a feather (idm) – very light, not weighing much
- The little child was as light as a feather in her arms.
10.126 as long as your arm (idm) – very long (usually of lists) • Her list of things for him to do around the house was as long as your arm. ❖ εκτενής, μακροσκελής (λίστα)

10.127 as sick as a parrot (idm) – very unwell • He had a bad cold and felt as sick as a parrot. ❖ πολύ άρρωστος

10.128 as thin as a stick (idm) – very thin • He’s as thin as a stick – doesn’t he eat anything? ❖ πολύ λεπτός,

10.129 as old as the hills (idm) – very old • This clock is as old as the hills, but it still works perfectly. ❖ πολύ παλιός

10.130 as white as a sheet (idm) – (of a person) very white in the face, usually because of fear, tiredness or shock • You look as white as a sheet! ❖ πολύ χλωμός

Expressions (page 178)

10.131 Watch your step (expr) – be careful (or you will make someone angry) • Watch your step. Dad is in a bad mood today. ❖ Προσέξε τι λέει και τι κάνεις

10.132 Have it your own way! (expr) – used to tell sb that they can do something the way they want to (but you don’t think it’s the right way) • Have it your own way! But don’t come crying to me when you feel sick because you’ve eaten too much ice cream. ❖ Κάνε ο, τι δείχνεις, κάνε ο, τι σου αρέσει

10.133 How come? (expr) – (very informal) why? • ‘Jane is not at work today.’ ‘How come? Is she not well?’ ❖ γιατί;

10.134 I couldn’t do without one (expr) – I really need it • Thank goodness I have a good mobile phone. I couldn’t do without one. ❖ δεν μπορώ να κάνω χωρίς αυτό

10.135 Give me a break! (expr) – (very informal) I don’t believe you, I don’t agree with you • ‘I’ve been studying all day.’ ‘Give me a break! You’ve been playing computer games.’ ❖ δε σε πιστεύω, «πηλάκα κάνεις»

10.136 Not on your life! (expr) – (very informal) never • ‘Would you ever go scuba diving?’ ‘Not on your life! I can’t swim.’ ❖ Ποτέ των ποτών

10.137 It can’t be helped (expr) – never mind, we can’t change anything so we have to accept it • It’s a pity it’s raining, but it can’t be helped. We’ll just have to have the party indoors. ❖ Δε γίνεται αλλιώς, αναγκάζομαι να υποστώ κάτι

10.138 You can say that again! (expr) – I totally agree with you • ‘It’s so hot in here.’ ‘You can say that again! It feels like we’re in an oven.’ ❖ ξαναπέστο
Gerunds and Infinitives

So, such, too, enough and very

Demonstratives

11.01 drawer (n) – part of a piece of furniture that you pull out to open and push in to close. Most people keep their knives and forks in a drawer in the kitchen.

11.02 shed (n) – simple structure (e.g. in a garden or at the back of a house), often used for storage of tools, wood, etc. We keep the lawn mower and other gardening tools in the shed in the garden.

11.03 wardrobe/closet (n) – a large cupboard where you can hang clothes, coats, suits, dresses, etc on a rail. He needs a large wardrobe for all his clothes.

11.04 be attached to (v phr) – be fond of, like sb/sth very much, usually after a period of time has passed. He was very attached to the town where he grew up.

11.05 convert (v) – change sth from one form into another. I’m going to convert some US dollars into English pounds. They decided to convert the garage into an office.

11.06 extend (v) – make sth bigger or longer. They extended the kitchen and increased the value of the house.

11.07 stick (v) – to become fixed in position, not to move. The ring was too small for her finger and when she tried to take it off, she found it was stuck.

11.08 floor (n) – 1. the surface on which you stand in a building. I dropped water on the floor. 2. a level of a building. His office is on the tenth floor.

11.09 indoors (n) – inside a building, not outside. We stayed indoors because it was raining.

11.10 inner city (n phr) – the central part of a city. Inner city areas are usually over-crowded.

11.11 interior (n) – inside part (usually of a building, country, etc). The interior of the office building was very luxurious.

11.12 internal (adj) – concerning the inside of an organisation rather than influences outside it. The vice-president of the company regarded the matter an internal one, and did not inform the news agencies.

Vocabulary 1 (page 182)

A (page 182)

11.01 drawer (n) – part of a piece of furniture that you pull out to open and push in to close. Most people keep their knives and forks in a drawer in the kitchen.

11.02 shed (n) – simple structure (e.g. in a garden or at the back of a house), often used for storage of tools, wood, etc. We keep the lawn mower and other gardening tools in the shed in the garden.

11.03 wardrobe/closet (n) – a large cupboard where you can hang clothes, coats, suits, dresses, etc on a rail. He needs a large wardrobe for all his clothes.

11.04 be attached to (v phr) – be fond of, like sb/sth very much, usually after a period of time has passed. He was very attached to the town where he grew up.

11.05 convert (v) – change sth from one form into another. I’m going to convert some US dollars into English pounds. They decided to convert the garage into an office.

11.06 extend (v) – make sth bigger or longer. They extended the kitchen and increased the value of the house.

11.07 stick (v) – to become fixed in position, not to move. The ring was too small for her finger and when she tried to take it off, she found it was stuck.

11.08 floor (n) – 1. the surface on which you stand in a building. I dropped water on the floor. 2. a level of a building. His office is on the tenth floor.

11.09 indoors (n) – inside a building, not outside. We stayed indoors because it was raining.

11.10 inner city (n phr) – the central part of a city. Inner city areas are usually over-crowded.
11.21 feature (n) – an important characteristic or part

- The new computer program has a lot of new features which I find very useful. ➤ feature (v)
  στοιχείο, χαρακτηριστικό

11.22 fittings (n) – items (e.g., lights, shelves, kitchen appliances) that are installed in a house but can be removed when the person living there moves; as opposed to fixtures (items that are permanently installed: e.g., sinks, toilets, walk-in wardrobes)

- When she moved into the luxury flat, the landlord provided her with a brand-new fridge, air-conditioner and other fittings. ➤ εξαρτήματα, επιπλώσεις, εγκαταστάσεις

11.23 ornament (n) – a beautiful object used to decorate a room

- She put a few ornaments on the coffee table to make it look nice. ➤ διακοσμητικό, στολίδι

F (page 183)

11.24 develop (v) – (with direct object) gradually build sth up into a more advanced state

- The students have worked hard to develop their skills this year. / It took months for the architect to develop plans for the new factory. ➤ development (n), developing (adj), developed (adj) ➤ αναπτύσσω

11.25 renew (v) – begin again after a pause or interruption; bring new life to sth

- E-mail makes it easy to renew friendships with old friends who you may have lost touch with. ➤ ανανεώνω/-ομαι

11.26 renovate (v) – put sth (e.g., a building, home or shop) into good condition by making repairs or installing new equipment

- He renovated the old house by installing new heating, plumbing and wiring. ➤ ανακαίνισα

11.27 restore (v) – return sth to its original condition

- The painting looks much better now that museum experts have restored it. ➤ restoration (n) ➤ ανακατασκευάζω

11.28 overlook (v) – have a view over

- Our office overlooks the marina. ➤ βλέπω προς, έχω θέα προς

G (page 183)

11.29 location (n) – place or position

- I hear the restaurant is moving to a new location. Do you know the address? ➤ locator (n), locate (v) ➤ τοποθετεί, θέα

11.30 point (n) – an exact moment, time or stage in something's development

- At one point during the party, he realised that he was the youngest person there. ➤ στιγμή, σημείο

H (page 183)

11.31 position (n) – the place where sb/sth is

- The bed wasn't in the right position; it was too close to the door. ➤ τοποθετεί, θέα

11.32 property (n) – land or buildings that a person owns

- Mike owns several properties in the centre of town. / She inherited a fortune in property from her father. ➤ ακίνητο, ακίνητη

11.33 site (n) – a piece of ground that is or was used for a particular purpose

- Thousands of tourists visit the archaeological site of Olympia every summer. ➤ χώρος, τόπος, τοποθετεί

Similar but different: site, location, position – Site is the actual piece of ground that has been used for a particular purpose. (Where will the site of the new airport be?) Location is a more formal word for a place where someone lives or works, or where something is built. (We have to find a central location for our new restaurant.) Position is used to talk about the place where something is in relation to other things. (The flowers need to be in a sunny position in the garden.)

11.34 available (adj) – obtainable, able to be used, on hand

- I hear tickets are still available for the concert. Would you like to go? ➤ availability (n).
  ➤ Opp: unavailable ➤ διαθέσιμος

11.35 communal (adj) – shared or used by all members of a group

- The hospital has a garden, a reading room and several other communal areas which are open to patients and their visitors. ➤ community (n)
  ➤ κοινόχρηστος

11.36 convenient (adj) – easy, suited to sb's needs and desires

- His office was in a convenient location, just a few minutes' walk from home in an area full of shops and restaurants. ➤ convenience (n), conveniently (adv).
  ➤ Opp: inconvenience ➤ χωριστός

11.37 separate (adj) – (of a space, place, room) not shared

- The house has a sitting room with a separate dining room. ➤ separate (v), separation (n), separately (adv) ➤ χωριστός

11.38 spacious (adj) – roomy, with lots of space to move around

- The hotel has a spacious bar where dozens of guests gather to watch the sunset each evening.
  ➤ space (v), spaciously (adv).
  ➤ Opp: cramped ➤ ευρύχωρος
Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 184)

11.39  **back out of** (phr v) – decide not to do sth previously promised or agreed on  
• I know Tom agreed to go with you, but don’t be surprised if he tries to back out of it.  
❖ υπαναχωρώ, (με) κάνω πίσω

11.40  **bring off** (phr v) – succeed in doing sth difficult  
• I didn’t believe that he would be able to put on a good show, but he managed to bring it off.  
❖ φέρω κάτι σε πέρας

11.41  **clear out** (phr v) – make a place tidy by removing unwanted things  
• I must clear out the garage; it’s full of stuff I don’t need anymore.  
❖ καθαρίζω, αδειάζω

11.42  **do up** (phr v) – (for houses, rooms) redecorate, by painting, etc.  
• The living room looks great. When did you find time to do it up?  
❖ φρεσκάρω, ανακαινίζω

11.43  **draw up** (phr v) – plan out and put into written form  
• After the terms of the agreement were discussed, the lawyers drew up a contract.  
❖ συντάσσω (π.χ., συμβόλαιο, νομοσχέδιο)

11.44  **get out** (phr v) – go places and meet people, get out of the house and have fun  
• After breaking up with her boyfriend, it was months before she felt the urge to get out and about and start having fun again.  
❖ βγαίνω έξω, κυκλοφορώ

11.45  **get up** (phr v) – climb  
• She’ll have difficulty getting up the hill in those high-heeled shoes.  
❖ ανέβαινω, ανακαινίζω

11.46  **hang on to** (phr v) – keep, not throw away or lose  
• Hang on to your old jeans; you might need to wear them while you’re painting the house next week.  
❖ κρατάω κάτι, κολλώ σε κάτι

11.47  **let down** (phr v) – lower  
• She opened the window, let down a long rope and then started to climb down.  
❖ ρίχνω προς τα κάτω, κατεβάζω

11.48  **pull down** (phr v) – (of a building) take down, destroy  
• They pulled down the old house and built a block of apartments.  
❖ κατεδαφίζω

Prepositions 1 (page 184)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>on the/your left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>on the/your right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear day</td>
<td>on a clear day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view</td>
<td>view of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor</td>
<td>on the 2nd floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>in the middle of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compared</td>
<td>compared to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condition</td>
<td>in good/bad condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bed</td>
<td>in bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom</td>
<td>at the bottom of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>in need of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shade</td>
<td>in the shade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree</td>
<td>under the tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garden</td>
<td>in the garden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Items 1-12

1 B
11.49 intend (to) (v) – plan to do something • He intends to study law in the US. ⇒ intention (n), intentional (adj), intentionally (adv) ♦ σκοπεύω

2 B, C For A and D, see Vocabulary 1: G

2 B, C For A and D, see Vocabulary 1: G

11.50 spot (n) – particular place, especially a nice one • This is the perfect spot for a picnic. ⇒ spot (v) ♦ τόποι, μέρος, θέα, σημείο

11.51 situation (n) – position with regard to surroundings (the word is often used by people selling a building, house, etc) • The cottage is in a lovely situation, close to a beautiful lake. ⇒ θέα, τοποθεσία

3 For A and D, see Vocabulary 1: B. For B, see Vocabulary 1: B (Unit 10). For C, see Use of English Practice 1 (Unit 10).

4 A For B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: F.

11.52 review (v) – check or examine sth to make sure there are no mistakes • You should always review your compositions when you’ve finished writing. It’s amazing how many mistakes you’ll catch! ⇒ review (n) ♦ ανασκοπώ

5 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: C.

6 For A, B, C and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

7 A, B, D

11.53 clear (adj) – not covered or full of anything that stops you from doing or seeing sth • Please put all these books away. I need a clear desk before I start to write an essay. ⇒ clear (v), clearly (adv) ♦ καθαρός

11.54 neat and tidy (expr) – not messy • I like to keep my bedroom neat and tidy. ⇒ καθαρός, ίσως, άμεσα

11.55 polished (adj) – bright and shiny (from having been rubbed with a special substance) • It’s hard work to keep a home looking clean and polished. ⇒ γυαλισμένος, ήπιο τρίχα

8 For B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: A.

9 D For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: D.

11.56 loft (n) – space under the roof of a house where you can store things • She keeps all her suitcases up in the loft. ⇒ σοφίτα

10 For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: E.

11 C For A, B and D, see Vocabulary 1: H.

11.57 accessible (adj) – easy to enter, use, or approach • The village was easily accessible from the main road. ⇒ access (n, v), accessibility (n). ⇒ Opp: inaccessible ⇒ πρόσβαση, προσβάσιμος, προσβάσιμος

12 B, D

11.58 personal (adj) – concerning or belonging to you and no one else • She has a personal trainer because she doesn’t want to exercise with other people. ⇒ προσωπικός, άτομο

11.59 individual (adj) – single, separate • It’s not enough to learn the meaning of individual words in English; you also need to know the phrases in which they commonly occur. ⇒ μοναδικός, μοναδικά

Vocabulary 2 (page 188)

A (page 188)

11.60 access (n) – way to enter or reach a place • Access to the back garden is through the house. ⇒ πρόσβαση

11.61 corridor (n) – long narrow passageway • The corridor led to a beautiful sitting room with a fantastic view of the Thames. ⇒ διάδρομος

11.62 foyer (n) – large open space just inside the entrance to a theatre, hotel or other public building; same as lobby • If it’s cold, meet me in the foyer of the theatre to the right of the box office. ⇒ φουαγέ

11.63 town hall (n) – public building used for a town’s local government • He went to the town hall to complain about the town’s dirty streets. ⇒ δημάρχειο

11.64 row (n) – line of sth (e.g., seats, houses) • The cinema had about 25 rows of seats. ⇒ σειρά

B (page 188)

11.65 inhabitant (n) – sb who lives in a place • The number of inhabitants has increased dramatically in recent years, causing a severe housing shortage. ⇒ κατοίκος

11.66 landlord (n) – person who rents land, a building, or an apartment to sb • The landlord has a bad habit of raising my rent every year. ⇒ ιδιοκτήτης, ιδιοκτητικός

11.67 resident (n) – a person who lives in a particular house, flat, town, etc • All the residents complained about the noise coming from the bar across the street. ⇒ κατοίκος, κατοίκηση, κατοίκησης

11.68 tenant (n) – sb who rents a house or flat from a landlord • The last tenant was thrown out of the flat because he owed the landlord six months’ rent. ⇒ διαμέλιση
C (page 188)

11.69 book (v) – arrange to have or do something at a particular time • If you wish to stay at that hotel, book early. ➞ booking (n) κατοικία

11.70 charter (v) – pay money to have private use of a plane or boat • They chartered a yacht and sailed round the Greek islands. ➞ chartered (adj) ναυθαμία

11.71 employ (v) – pay someone to work • The company employs 250 people. ➞ employer (n), employee (n), employment (n) απασχόληση, δυναμικός σε

11.72 hire (v) – pay money to someone to use something that is theirs for a short period of time • We hired a car for the weekend and drove to Cambridge. ➞ hired (adj) ναυθαμία, μισθόσυνο

D (page 188)

11.75 button (n) – round knob or disk that one presses to operate sth • Push that button on the left and the computer turns on. ➞ button (n) κουμπί

11.76 fuse (n) – safety device that breaks the flow of electricity if a circuit is overloaded • The wiring in their house needs to be replaced. Every time she plugs in her hair dryer, a fuse burns out and the lights go out. ➞ fuse (n), fused (v) εκμισθώσαται, ναυθαμία-ομαδά

11.77 handle (n) – part of a door, window, drawer that you use for opening it • She turned the handle and opened the door. ➞ handle (v) κρατάω, έλεγχω

11.78 lock (n) – thing for keeping a door closed and unable to be opened without a key • He put a lock on his bedroom door because his sister kept taking his things without asking. ➞ lock (v), locked (adj) κλειδάρι

11.79 switch (n) – sth that stops or starts the flow of electricity when you push it up or down • Push the switch up and the light will go on. Push the switch down, and it will go off. ➞ switch (v) διακόπτω

11.80 tap / faucet (n) – part of a sink, bathtub, etc, that one turns to control the flow of water • Old-fashioned sinks had two taps: one for hot water and another for cold. ➞ βρεώ

E (page 188)

11.81 brick (n) – hard block of baked clay used as a building material • The house she lives in is made of bricks. ➞ ξύλο

11.82 construction (n) – the building of bridges, roads, public buildings, etc • The mayor said that work on the construction of the new hospital would begin soon. ➞ construct (v) κατασκευάζω, ανέγερση

11.83 foundations (pl n) – (of a building) solid layer of cement or other building material that forms the underground base on which a building is built • The foundations of the hotel were so strong that the building suffered no damage in the earthquake. ➞ θεμέλια

11.84 insulation (n) – protective material used (especially in buildings) to stop heat, sound or electricity getting out or in • We had the plumber put insulation on the pipes to prevent them from freezing in the winter. ➞ insulated (n), insulated (adj) μόνωση, μονωτικό υλικό

11.85 tile (n) – flat, square piece of baked clay or other material used to cover a roof, floor or wall • She admired the beautiful Italian tiles on the floor. ➞ tiled (adj), tile (v) κεραμίδι, πλακάκι

F (page 189)

11.86 cottage (n) – small house in the country (usually old) • They invited us to spend the weekend with them at their little cottage in the countryside. ➞ κατοικία, εξοχικό σπίτι

11.87 detached (adj) – (of a house) not connected to another building • I wish I lived in a detached house. I could hear the neighbours’ loud music through my bedroom wall last night. ➞ semi-detached (adj) ομαδά, μεσοτοιχία

11.88 mansion (n) – large, impressive house • The wealthy actor lives in a 30-room mansion in Beverly Hills. ➞ παλάτι

11.89 skyscraper (n) – very tall building in a city • There are many skyscrapers in New York City. ➞ υψηλότοιχος

11.90 studio flat (n) – a one-room apartment • She lives in a studio flat, so it is very small. ➞ γκαρσονιέρα

G (page 189)

11.91 extinguish (v) – put out, (cause to) stop burning • The fire fighters took hours to extinguish the blaze. ➞ extinguished (adj) σβήσω

11.92 reach (v) – (of a thing or place) to be big/long enough to get to • He needed a ladder that would reach the roof of the house. ➞ σβήνω, σβήνω από, αγγίζω

11.93 slide (v) – move smoothly over a smooth surface • Our dog loves to slide across the ice when the lake at the back of our house freezes over ➞ slide (n), sliding (adj) γλίστρω

Note: The verb is irregular: slide - slid - slid

11.94 switch off (phr v) – turn off (sth electrical) • Switch off the television if you’re not watching it. ➞ switch (v), switched (adj) σβήνω (και έχει διακόπτον)

11.95 terminate (v) – bring to an end • The director terminated their employment when he found out the two employees had stolen equipment. ➞ προκλήσιμη, τελειώσει
H (page 189)

11.96 isolated (adj) – alone, far away from others (people, buildings, etc) • Living in a foreign country where she couldn’t get a job or speak the language made her feel very isolated and alone. ➢ isolate (v), isolation (n) ❖ απομονωμένος

11.97 remote (adj) – (places) far away from cities or other centres of population, difficult to get to • The young boy dreamt of becoming an explorer and travelling to remote corners of the world. ❖ απομακρυσμένος

Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 190)

11.100 put away (phr v) – put back in its original place • Her mother gets angry if she doesn’t put away her toys after she finishes playing with them. ❖ τακτοποιώ, βάζω κτ στην θέση του

11.101 put out (phr v) – (fires) stop sth burning • He put out the fire by throwing a bucket of water over it. ❖ σβήνω

11.102 put up (phr v) – let sb stay in your house • I can put you up for the night; hotels are expensive. ❖ φιλοξενώ

11.103 send on (phr v) – send sb’s letters or possessions to their new address from their old address • When I moved house, she said that she would send on any letters addressed to me. ❖ προωθώ, μεταβιβάζω

11.104 show round (phr v) – be sb’s guide • I felt a bit lost on my first day in London as I had no one to show me around. ❖ ξεναγώ κτ

11.105 stand up to (phr v) – undergo and endure sth, resist • Materials used in space ships must be able to stand up to extremes of heat and cold. ❖ αντέχω

11.106 stick (it) out (phr v) – endure, tolerate • I know we don’t have much money, but we’ll just have to stick it out until I get a new job. ❖ αντέχω, κρατώ μέχρι το τέλος

11.107 stop in (phr v) – (very informal) stay at home • He was too tired to go out to dinner with his friends, so he decided to stop in and read a book. ❖ κάθομαι στο σπίτι, μένω μέσα

11.108 think of (phr v) – to produce a new idea, name, suggestion, etc by thinking • Can you think of a good name for my new book? ❖ προτείνω, σκέφτομαι

11.109 take up (phr v) – (time, space) occupy • A big piece of furniture takes up too much space. / Cooking takes up a lot of time. ❖ απασχολώ (χρόνο), καταλαμβάνω (χώρο)

Preposition 2 (page 190)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shortage</td>
<td>shortage of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance</td>
<td>in the distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>way</td>
<td>in the way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convert</td>
<td>convert sth into sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corner (street)</td>
<td>on/at the corner of the street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front</td>
<td>in front of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wall</td>
<td>on the wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear day</td>
<td>on a clear day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corner of the room</td>
<td>in the corner of the room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>in all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slide</td>
<td>slide into</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.110 shortage of (n phr) – lack of sth, not having enough of sth • The war-torn country is suffering from a shortage of food and medical supplies. ❖ ἐλλειπσις

11.111 in the distance (n phr) – in a place that is far away but can be seen or heard • I could see the Acropolis in the distance. ❖ στο βάθος, πέρα μακριά

11.112 be in the way (idm) – be directly in front of sb, blocking the view or the way • I tried to get to the door but there were too many people in the way. ❖ εμποδίζω

11.113 convert into (v phr) – change into another form • We now have technology that can convert sunlight into electrical energy. ❖ μετατρέπω

11.114 in all (idm) – in total, altogether • In all, more than 1,000 people lost their lives in car accidents last year. ❖ συνολικά

English in Use (page 194)

Similes
11.115 as clean as a whistle (idm) – very clean • His new car was as clean as a whistle. ❖ πολύ καθαρός

11.116 as clear as day (idm) – obvious • It was as clear as day that the child wasn’t telling the truth. ❖ ξεκάθαρος, ολοφάνερος

11.117 as cool as ice (idm) – very cold • Your hands are as cool as ice. Put some gloves on. ❖ πολύ κρύος, μπούζι

11.118 as free as a bird (idm) – without anything holding you back • As soon as I leave my boring job, I’ll be as free as a bird. ❖ απαλλαγμένος από υποχρεώσεις, «ελεύθερο πουλί»

11.119 as hard as nails (idm) – having a very tough, strong character • She’s as hard as nails. She didn’t show any emotion when her father died. ❖ πολύ σκληρός, άτεγκτος, αδιάλλακτος

11.120 as red as a beetroot (idm) – flushed, very red in the face • She went as red as a beetroot when she dropped her glass at the party. ❖ πολύ κόκκινος, κοκκίνωσε

11.121 as sound as a bell (idm) – very well made • This boat is as sound as a bell, it will never sink. ❖ πολύ πολύπτυχος, καθαροφασμένος

11.122 as stubborn as a mule (idm) – very stubborn and unwilling to change your mind • My father’s as stubborn as a mule – he’ll never let me go to the party. ❖ ικανουργώμων, πιστικάρσης

11.113 convert into (v phr) – change into another form • We now have technology that can convert sunlight into electrical energy. ❖ μετατρέπω

11.114 in all (idm) – in total, altogether • In all, more than 1,000 people lost their lives in car accidents last year. ❖ συνολικά

Expressions with ‘and’
11.123 peace and quiet (expr) – no noise or bother • He needed some peace and quiet, so he went to his room and closed the door. ❖ γαλήνη και ησυχία

11.124 part and parcel (expr) – sth that cannot be separated from • Homework is part and parcel of going to school. ❖ αναπόσπαστο μέρος

11.125 loud and clear (expr) – without any possibility of a misunderstanding • The message was loud and clear: I had to give them a pay rise or they would resign. ❖ προφανής, ξεκάθαρος

11.126 the ins and outs of sth (expr) – all the details • Tell me all the ins and outs of what goes on in this company. ❖ ολές τις πεποιθήμενες

11.127 in black and white (expr) – written down • It’s here in black and white: we have to pay a fine of eighty pounds. ❖ γραπτώς

11.128 in leaps and bounds (expr) – with great progress and very quickly • Her English has come on in leaps and bounds in the last 3 months. She speaks very well now. ❖ αλματωδώς

11.129 bread and butter (expr) – main way of making money • I don’t take photos just for fun – it’s my bread and butter. ❖ ο τρόπος που βγάζω το ψωμί μου, ο τρόπος με τον οποίο εξασφαλίζω τα αναγκαία για να ζήσω
Vocabulary 1 (page 198)

A (page 198)

12.01 area (n) – a region or part of a place • The heavy rains have caused flooding in our area of the city.
❖ περιοχή, έκταση
12.02 facilities (pl n) – equipment, systems or special features provided for a certain purpose • The company needed to book a hotel with conference facilities.
❖ ευκολία/ευκολίες
12.03 gap (n) – a space or opening in sth or between two things • There is a large gap between his two front teeth.
❖ άνοιγμα, κενό, χάσμα
12.04 place (n) – 1. position (in a team, queue, etc) • He hoped he would get a place in the football team. 2. position in the result of a competition, race, etc • He was disappointed that he finished in seventh place in the race.
❖ θέση
12.05 position (n) – place in a team (as determined by the player’s location on the playing area) • Typical soccer positions include goalie, midfielder, forward, and striker.
❖ position (v) • θέω
12.06 space (n) – room, area that can be used/filled
• There is not enough space in this room for two beds.
❖ spacious (adj) • χώρος

B (page 198)

12.07 impress (v) – make sb admire you • Her performance in the play really impressed me.
❖ impression (n), impressive (adj) • εντυπωσία
12.08 improve (v) – get or make better • She took a language course to improve her French.
❖ improvement (n) • βελτιώση
12.09 increase (v) – become more • House prices increased by two percent last year.
❖ increase (n) • άνοδος, αυξάνω, αυξήθηκε
12.10 raise (v) – lift, move or increase sth to a higher level • Raise your hand if you want to ask a question in class.
❖ σηκώνω, σηκώσω, υψώνω.
Note: raise is always followed by an object.

C (page 198)

12.11 challenger (n) – sb ready to compete against an existing winner in a competition, race, fight, etc • He had already beaten the world record and there were no challengers to take the title from him.
❖ challenge (v, n), challenging (adj) • αντίπαλος που προκαλεί σε (αθλητική κ.τ.λ.) αναμέτρηση
12.12 competitor (n) – sb who takes part in a competition or contest • There are ten competitors in tomorrow’s race.
❖ competition (n), compete (v), competitive (adj), competitively (adv) • συμμετοχή, συμμετεχόμενος, ανταγωνισμός
12.13 contestant (n) – sb who takes part in a contest • The next contestant on the phone is John Brown.
❖ contest (n, v) • αντίπαλος, αντίπαλος
12.14 leader (n) – sb who is ahead of others • He tried his best in the race, but he couldn’t get ahead of the leader.
❖ lead (n, v) • ανόιγμα, χάσμα
12.15 opponent (n) – sb who is against another (e.g., in a game, fight, or argument) • They knew the match would be difficult, as their opponents were well trained.
❖ opposition (n), oppose (v) • αντίπαλος
12.16 participant (n) – sb who takes part in sth • Over a thousand participants are expected to run in the city’s marathon this year.
❖ participation (n), participate (v) • συμμετέχω

Similar but different: competitor, contestant – these words mean almost the same thing, but you would not use the word contestant for somebody who is taking part in a race or sporting event. It is more commonly used for somebody who takes part in a quiz show, beauty contest, spelling contest, etc. A competitor takes part in a race and can also enter a contest. In other words, competitor is a more general word. Contestant has a more limited usage.

D (page 198)

12.17 earlier (adv) – beforehand, in advance • If she had known that they were coming to visit her earlier, she would have baked a cake.
❖ νυχτερινά
12.18 former (adj) – previous, past, of or at an earlier time • To apply for the job, you must submit two letters of reference from your former employers.
❖ formerly (adv) • προηγούμενος, προηγούμενος
12.29  course

12.20  in the past (expr) – before the present • He was a doctor in the past, but now he works in a shop. ➢ past (n, v) ➢ προηγούμενος

12.21  previous (adj) – happening or existing before the one mentioned • He found the writer’s previous book much more exciting than the one that was just published. ➢ previously (adv) ➢ προηγούμενο

E (page 199)
12.22  championship (n) – big competition to find out which player(s) is/are the best in a particular sport • They have already won the national basketball championship. Now they’re going to the European basketball championship. ➢ champion (n) ➢ πρωτάθλημα

12.23  event (n) – any of the races, competitions, etc, occurring as part of a day’s sports • The next event will be the long jump. ➢ αγώνας, αγόρινό γεγονός

12.24  final (n) – the last and most important part in a competition • The tennis player reached the final, but he didn’t win it. He came second. ➢ τέλος

12.25  match (n) – a game or sports event between two teams or two people • The football match was on TV so he didn’t go to the stadium to see it. ➢ ματς, αγώνας

12.26  race (n) – a competition in which each competitor tries to run, drive, swim, etc, the fastest • He came seventh in the race because his leg was hurting him. ➢ αγώνας ταχύτητας

12.27  tournament (n) – a sports competition that consists of a number of different games or matches • Who won the school tennis tournament last year? ➢ τουρνουά

F (page 199)
12.28  course (n) – (sports) an area where a race is held or where a sport is played in which players move forward over a certain area • The skiers sped down the slalom course. / Golf is played on a golf course. ➢ course (v) ➢ (ακι) πίστα, (γκούντο) γήπεδο

12.29  court (n) – a special place where tennis, basketball, etc is played • The hotel had a big swimming pool and four tennis courts. ➢ γήπεδο (ν.χ. τένις, μπάσκετ, κ.λ.π.)

12.30  pitch (n) – grassy field or area, where sports like soccer, rugby and cricket are played • The crowd cheered as the two football teams ran on to the pitch. ➢ αγωνιστικός χώρος γήπεδου

12.31  ring (n) – small square area surrounded by ropes where people box • He climbed into the boxing ring and sat in his corner until the fight was about to begin. ➢ ρίγκ (τετράγωνη εξέδρα που περικλείεται από σκοινιά στιν οποία γίνονται αγώνες πυγμαχίας)

G (page 199)
12.32  rink (n) – place where people ice skate or roller skate • There were so many people at the ice rink that she found it difficult to find enough space to skate properly. ➢ αμοιβή για παισμένια ή παίνια.

12.33  slope (n) – the side of a hill or mountain • In spring, the grassy slopes of the mountain are covered with flowers. / She skied down the ski slope at top speed. ➢ πίστα, πίστα, κλίση

12.34  track (n) – (sports) a prepared course or circuit laid out for athletes, cars, or animals to race on • How many times can you run around the track inside the stadium? ➢ track (v) ➢ πίστα, στίβος

H (page 199)
12.40  beat (v) – do better than • She always beats her sister at tennis. ➢ νικώ, νικάω

12.41  draw (v) – a sports result with neither side winning • The football match ended in a draw, so both teams were disappointed. ➢ draw (v) ➢ ισοπαλία

12.42  gain an advantage (v phr) – achieve sth as a result of a particular action that might help you be successful • The team was ahead 4 goals to 1 going into the final quarter. They had gained an advantage; now they had to keep it. ➢ βρίσκομαι σε πλέοντικη θέση

12.43  be knocked out (expr) – be defeated in a competition and so not be part of the competition anymore • They were knocked out in the second round of the competition. ➢ knock out (v) ➢ βγαίνω από, αποκλείωμαι
### Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 200)

**12.44 back (sb) up** (phr v) – support sb  ● They wouldn’t have believed me if you hadn’t backed me up. ➢ backup (n) ➢ υποστηρίζω

**12.45 call off** (phr v) – cancel, make sth that was planned not happen  ● They called off the show because most of the actors were sick. ➢ σκεπάζω, ματαιώνω

**12.46 clear off** (phr v) – (informal) leave a place quickly, disappear  ● Clear off! You’re not welcome here. ➢ στρίβε, εξαφανίσου

**12.47 count (sb) in** (phr v) – include sb in a planned activity  ● If the rest of you are going to the cinema, count me in, too! ➢ Opp: count (sb) out (phr v) ➢ λογαριάζω / υπολογίζω

**12.48 drop back** (phr v) – start to go more slowly than another moving person or thing and get further behind it  ● The racing car started well, but then dropped back to last position. ➢ ξεμένω πίσω

**12.49 get off** (phr v) – escape punishment for doing sth wrong  ● As it was the first time he had been arrested for shoplifting, he got off with only a small fine. ➢ την γίνητως φτιάχνω

**12.50 get (sth) out of** (phr v) – get, gain (sth good) from sth  ● She didn’t get much out of that course – it was a waste of time, I think. ➢ κερδίζω, παίρνω, αποκτώ

**12.51 go in for** (phr v) – (exams, contests) sit for, enter oneself as a candidate or contestant  ● His teacher encouraged him to go in for the Proficiency exam. ➢ συμμετέχω

**12.52 hold on** (phr v) – (informal) wait  ● Hold on a minute, will you? I need to get my bag. ➢ περιμένω

**12.53 take up** (phr v) – start to do an activity/job for the first time  ● Everyone in his family is a lawyer, so we were surprised to hear that he wants to take up medicine. ➢ (αρχίζω να) ασχολούμαι με κτ

### Prepositions 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>win by (two points)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>draw with sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>present sb with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>practice</td>
<td>out of practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loss</td>
<td>at a loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lose to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be disqualified</td>
<td>be disqualified from sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form</td>
<td>in good/great form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breath</td>
<td>out of breath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costs</td>
<td>at all costs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**12.54 win (by) (v) – be the first in a competition/race (we use ‘by’ after ‘win’ to define how many points/miles, etc the winner was ahead by)  ● We won by twenty points. It was an easy match for us to win. ➢ win (n), winning (adj) ➢ κερδίζω**

**12.55 draw (with) (v) – end a game with neither side winning  ● She drew with Mary Evans in the final, so they will have to play again to see who wins in the end. ➢ draw (n) ➢ φέρνω ισοπαλία, έχω ισοπαλία**

**12.56 present (with) (v) – give someone something in a formal way  ● The President of the Olympic Committee presented the athletes with their medals. ➢ presentation (n) ➢ παραδίδω, δίνω**  

**Note:** present someone with something, present something to someone

**12.57 out of practice (idm) – out of the habit of doing sth that one used to do  ● He hasn’t spoken Spanish in twenty years, so he’s terribly out of practice. ➢ δεν είμαι σε φόρμα, έχω ξεσυνηθίσει**
12.58 at a loss (expr) – (idm) ➔ be at a loss (idm) – not know what to say or how to react. When they told her she had won a million pounds in the lottery, she was understandably at a loss. ✤ τα έξω χαμένα

12.59 lose (to) (v phr) – be beaten by. He’s never lost to his sister, so he knows he will win. ➣ loss (n)

12.60 disqualify (from) (v) – stop sb from taking part in a competition because they have done sth wrong. She was disqualified from the competition because she had been taking drugs. ➣ disqualification (n)

12.61 be in good/great form (idm) – perform extremely well. ➤ When the tennis champion is in good form, no one can beat him. ✤ είμαι σε φόρμα, είμαι στις καλές μου

Note: ‘Be on form’ has the same meaning.

12.62 out of breath (idm) ➔ be out of breath (idm) – huff and puff, pant, breathe with difficulty (esp. as a result of vigorous activity). The hikers were out of breath when they reached the top of long, steep hill.

12.63 at all costs (idm) – as a top priority, regardless of cost or outcome. A peaceful solution to the problem must be found at all costs; thousands of lives are at stake. ✤ πάση θυσία

Items 1-12
1 For A, B, C, D, see Vocabulary 1: C, E and G.
2 C For A, B and D, see Vocabulary 1: D.
12.64 recent (adj) – having happened or appeared not long ago. The president’s recent meeting with European leaders went very well. ✤ πρόσφατος
3 A For B and C, see Vocabulary 1: H.
12.65 earn (v) – get money by working. He earns a lot of money as a lawyer. ✤ κερδίζω
4 C For D, see Vocabulary 1: H.
12.66 take advantage (of sth/sb) (idm) – use sth/sb for one’s own good (sometimes unfairly or at sb’s expense). Studying in Spain is a great opportunity. I hope you take advantage of it. / He’ll never pay you back. Can’t you see he’s trying to take advantage of you? ✤ εκμεταλλεύομαι
5 D For A, B and C, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
12.67 fall through (phr v) – (of plans) collapse, fail to happen as expected. Her vacation plans may fall through due to an unexpected airline strike. ✤ αποτυγχάνω
6 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: F.
7 For A, B and C, see Vocabulary 1: A and F.
8 D
12.68 close the gap (idm) – reduce the amount of difference. The government cannot close the gap between the rich and the poor. ✤ γεφυρώνω το χάσμα
12.69 raise money (expr) – collect money to help people. They raised enough money to send the sick child to America for the operation. ✤ μαζεύω χρήματα για κοινωφελή σκοπό
10 A, C For B and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
12.70 count on (phr v) – depend on. Children count on their parents to provide them with food, clothing, and love. ✤ βασίζομαι σε κτ/κπ
12.71 leave in (phr v) – let sth stay/remain where it is. He left his book in the car. ✤ στην καταφύγιο (αε)
11 C For A, B and D, see Vocabulary 1: C.
12.72 player (n) – sb who takes part in a game or sport. The basketball players were happy when they won. ➤ play (v) ✤ παικτής
12 B, C For A and D, see Vocabulary 1: A.
12.73 member (n) – a person belonging to a club, organisation, etc. She’s a member of the sailing club. ➤ membership (n) ✤ μέλος
12.74 seat (n) – a place as a member of an official organisation. As his father owns the company, he has a seat on the board of directors. ✤ θέση
12.75 equipment (n) – set of tools, machines, etc for a particular activity. Photographers usually have to carry around a lot of equipment. ➢ equip (v) ❖ εξοπλισμός

12.76 gear (n) – equipment, tools, supplies, or clothing used for a particular purpose or activity. Before setting off on our camping trip, we checked to see if we had our tents, sleeping bags, and other gear. ❖ εξοπλισμός, σύνεργα, εργαλεία

12.77 kit (n) – set of clothes for a particular sport. I’ve left my football kit at home, so I can’t play. ❖ σετ

12.78 tracksuit (n) – a comfortable outfit consisting of a top and trousers that people wear to relax in or to do sport. Many teenagers wear tracksuits and sports kit to do sport. ➢ Am Eng: sweat suit ❖ φόρμα αθλητική

Similar but different: equipment and gear mean almost the same thing. Equipment is a little more formal. Gear is also used when related to clothing: headgear, football gear.

12.79 bat (n) – a piece of equipment made of wood that is used in some sports. Now try to hit the ball with the bat. ➢ bat (v) ❖ μπάτσι, ρόπαλο

12.80 club (n) – a piece of equipment that is used for hitting the ball in the game of golf. I bought my dad a new set of golf clubs for his birthday. ❖ μπάτσι του γκολφ

12.81 racket (n) – stick with a net used for hitting a ball in games like tennis, squash and badminton. I wonder how many rackets a tennis player owns. ❖ ράκετα

12.82 stick (n) – long, thin rod used for playing certain sports like hockey and lacrosse. She was hit on the leg by a hockey stick during the game. ❖ μπάτσι (για χόκεϋ κ.τ.λ.)

12.83 attendance (n) – being in a certain place, there, present. It’s said that the President will be in attendance at the opera tonight. ❖ παρουσία, παρακολουθήσεων

12.84 crowd (n) – large number of people gathered together, usually in a disorganised fashion. A crowd of people waited outside the theatre, hoping to get a look at the famous actor. ➢ crowd (v), crowded (adj) ❖ πλήθος

12.85 spectator (n) – sb who watches an event or sport. The stadium was crowded with enthusiastic spectators. ➢ spectacle (n), spectacular (adj) ❖ παρακολούθηση, συμπεριφορά

12.86 supporter (n) – sb who is loyal to a particular team. The football supporters caused a lot of trouble after the match. ➢ support (v), supportive (adj) ❖ υποστήριξη

12.87 referee (n) – sb who judges some types of games, including football. The referee blew his whistle at the end of the match. ➢ referee (v) ❖ διαιτητής

12.88 umpire (n) – sb who judges some types of games, including tennis. The umpire told the tennis player to stop shouting every time he hit the ball. ➢ umpire (v) ❖ διαιτητής (για τένις, κρίκετ κ.τ.λ.)

Similar but different: Referee and umpire are similar words but they are used in connection with different sports. A referee is used in basketball, boxing, football, hockey, lacrosse, rugby, snooker, squash and wrestling. An umpire is used in badminton, baseball, cricket, swimming, tennis and volleyball.

12.89 amateur (n) – sb who does sth or takes part in sth for pleasure (rather than for money). An amateur pursues a hobby for the love of it and doesn’t expect to profit. ➢ amateurish (adj), amateurishly (adv). ➢ Opp: professional ❖ ερασιτέχνης

12.90 coach (n) – a person who trains people in a sport. After a successful career as a footballer, he decided to become a coach. ➢ coach (v), coaching (n) ❖ προπονητής

12.91 expert (adj) – having a high degree of knowledge about or skill in a particular area, a specialist. If you need to know something about modern American history, ask Professor Mills. He has expert knowledge in the field. ➢ expert (n), expertise (n), expertly (adv) ❖ ερασιτέχνης, ερασιτεχνίτης, ερασιτεχνίτης

12.92 international (n) – sb who plays for their country’s team in a sports match taking place between more than one country. As an international, he played in his country’s team. ➢ international (adj) ❖ διεθνής

12.93 novice (n) – a beginner, sb who is new to or inexperienced at sth. The president is younger than most world leaders, but he’s no novice when it comes to politics. ➢ novice (adj) ❖ αρχάριος, πρωτάρης

12.94 professional (adj) – doing a particular job or occupation for money (rather than for pleasure). The young golfer hopes to turn professional someday. ➢ profession (n), professionally (adv). ➢ Opp: amateur ❖ ερασιτεχνίτης

D (page 204)

12.96 supporter (n) – sb who is loyal to a particular team. The football supporters caused a lot of trouble after the match. ➢ support (v), supportive (adj) ❖ υποστήριξη

12.97 referee (n) – sb who judges some types of games, including football. The referee blew his whistle at the end of the match. ➢ referee (v) ❖ διαιτητής

12.98 umpire (n) – sb who judges some types of games, including tennis. The umpire told the tennis player to stop shouting every time he hit the ball. ➢ umpire (v) ❖ διαιτητής (για τένις, κρίκετ κ.τ.λ.)

Similar but different: Referee and umpire are similar words but they are used in connection with different sports. A referee is used in basketball, boxing, football, hockey, lacrosse, rugby, snooker, squash and wrestling. An umpire is used in badminton, baseball, cricket, swimming, tennis and volleyball.
Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 206)

12.115 hold out (phr v) – continue to resist or last • The well-trained soldiers were able to hold out despite the heavy enemy attack. / Your money will hold out if you spend it wisely. / The salary was terrible, so I decided to hold out for a better job offer. ❖ αντέχω, αντιστέκομαι, κρατώ

12.116 join in (phr v) – take part in sth as a member of a group • The little boy joined in when he saw some children playing football in the park. ❖ συμμετέχω, συμμετέχω σε
12.117 **knock out** (phr v) – defeat in a competition and so not allow to continue
- *Their team was knocked out early on in the competition.*  
- εκτός συναγωνισμού, αποκλείω

12.118 **leave in** (phr v) – allow to remain
- *They left him in the team, even though he was not a good player.*  
- επιτρέπω σε κάποιον να παραμείνει

12.119 **look on** (phr v) – (without an object) stand by and watch without taking an active part
- *Don’t just stand there looking on. Help me tidy up this mess!*  
- παρακολουθώ, στέκομαι και κοιτάζω (σαν θεατής)

12.120 **miss out** (phr v) – not be involved in something that would be enjoyable
- *Of course I’m coming with you! I don’t want to miss out on all the fun!*  
- miss out on something

12.121 **pass off** (phr v) – take place and be completed
- *Although she had been worried, the meeting passed off well.*  
- εξελίσσομαι, γίνομαι

12.122 **play away** (phr v) – (of a sports team) not play in the team’s home town but somewhere else
- *When they play away, he watches the match on television.*  
- παίζω εκτός έδρας

12.123 **put off** (phr v) – postpone, delay till a later time
- *The boss had an emergency at home, so we’ll have to put off the meeting till next week.*  
- αναβάλλω

12.124 **throw (sb) out** (phr v) – make sb leave a place
- *The teacher threw him out of the classroom for being rude.*  
- πέταω εξω, αποβάλλω

---

### Prepositions 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>level</td>
<td>at a level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be disappointed</td>
<td>be disappointed with sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>out of the question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good/bad mood</td>
<td>in a good/bad mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lose by 2 goals to nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sake</td>
<td>for the sake of sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have an effect</td>
<td>have an effect on sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argue</td>
<td>argue with sb about sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>develop into sth/vsb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pressure</td>
<td>under pressure to do sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi-final</td>
<td>in the semi-final</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualify</td>
<td>qualify for sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key word(s)**: Phrase with preposition
- **level at a level**
- **be disappointed** be disappointed with sb/sth
- **question** out of the question
- **good/bad mood** in a good/bad mood
- **lose** lose by 2 goals to nil
- **sake** for the sake of sb/sth
- **have an effect** have an effect on sb/sth
- **argue** argue with sb about sth
- **develop** develop into sth/vsb
- **pressure** under pressure to do sth
- **semi-final** in the semi-final
- **qualify** qualify for sth

**12.125 (at a) level** (expr) – at a particular standard of ability or skill (usually concerning sport or education)
- *By the time she was sixteen, she was speaking English at an advanced level.*  
- επίπεδο

**12.126 be disappointed with** – be sad because something is not as good as expected
- *I was disappointed with your performance in the exam. I thought you would do better.*  
- διαθέτω

**12.127 out of the question** (idm) – impossible
- *Buying a new car is out of the question right now; I simply haven’t got the money.*  
- εκτός συζήτησης, αδύνατο

**12.128 in a (good/bad) mood** (idm) – feeling cheerful/bad-tempered
- *From that big smile on the director’s face, I’d say she was in a good mood.*  
- σε (καλή/κακή) διάθεση

**12.129 for the sake of** (idm) – in order to help or please sb/sth
- *The couple decided to stay together for the sake of their young children.*  
- για χάρη κάποιου

**12.130 have an effect on** (phr) – influence, have the ability to change what sb does/thinks, etc
- *Although she’s eighteen, her mother still influences how she dresses.*  
- επηρεάζω
12.131 argue (with sb) (v) disagree, fight with words
- He argued with his cousin last week and they are still not speaking to each other. ➢ argument (n), argumentative (adj), argumentatively (adv) ❖ διαφωνώ, ματάται, λογομαχώ

12.132 develop (into) (v) – gradually build sth up into a more advanced state ➢ Although the company was small when it started, it developed into a huge international organisation. ➢ development (n), developing (adj), developed (adj) ❖ αναπτύσσω, αναπτύσσομαι

12.133 (be/feel) under pressure (idm) – feel stressed and having a feeling of obligation to do well ➢ Students usually feel under pressure to do well in their exams. ➢ pressure (n), pressurise (v), press (v) ❖ είμαι αναγκασμένος, πιεσμένος

12.134 qualify (for sth) (v) – have the necessary standard of ability/experience for sth ➢ If you have a college degree and four years of experience, you qualify for the job. If you don’t, don’t bother applying for it. ➢ qualification (n), qualified (adj), qualifying (adj) ❖ έχω τα προσόντα

Similes (page 209)

12.135 be selling like hot cakes (idm) – being sold very quickly and in large amounts ➢ The dress that is on the front cover of the magazine is selling like hot cakes. ➢ πουλάει εμπορικά, πουλάεται προανάγω

12.136 go like clockwork (idm) – happen very easily, usually because sth has been planned well ➢ Their wedding day went like clockwork – everything was perfect. ➢ πηγαίνω εντελεία, ρολόι

12.137 get on like a house on fire (idm) – (usually of two people) be very friendly with each other, like each other a lot ➢ Two people) be very friendly with each other, like each other a lot ➢ They got on like a house on fire and couldn’t stop talking when the lesson started. ➢ γινόμαστε φίλοι, γίνομαι γάντι

12.138 fit like a glove (idm) – fit very well ➢ This coat fits like a glove, I think I’ll buy it. ➢ εφαρμόζει τέτεια, μου έρχεται «γάντι»

12.139 eat like a horse (idm) – eat a lot ➢ My brother eats like a horse! He doesn’t stop eating all day. ➢ τρώω ασάφεια

12.140 run like lightning (idm) – move quickly, like lightning ➢ The frightened cat ran like lightning across the room and hid under the sofa. ➢ κινούμαι ηρωικά, λιοντάρι

12.141 fight like a lion (idm) – try very hard to do sth difficult ➢ He fought like a lion to provide enough money for his family to have food. ➢ παλεύω με αυτή τη σειρά, πιθύνω

12.142 packed like sardines (idm) – squashed in together, very close to each other ➢ We were packed like sardines in the train; it was difficult to breathe. ➢ στριμωχείος σα σε σαρδέλες, ο ένας πάνω στον άλλον

Expressions associated with sport (page 210)

12.143 refuse to play ball (expr) – not do what has been asked ➢ He wanted Carol to go with him to the dentist, but she refused to play ball. ➢ δεν δίπλωσε συνεργασίας

12.144 the ball is in his court (expr) – it’s his turn to take action or make a decision ➢ I offered him a job, now the ball’s in his court. ➢ έπειτα το μπαλάκι σε κάποιον

12.145 put the boot in (expr) – (informal) say unkind things to sb who is already upset ➢ He’s disappointed that he failed his exams, so there was no need to put the boot in by telling him that he should have studied harder. ➢ «ξώνω πηνγύες»

12.146 give sb the boot (expr) – (informal) make sb unemployed ➢ He was given the boot when he shouted at his boss. ➢ απολύω, δίνω κάποιον τα παπούτσια στο κέρα

12.147 beat sb at their own game (expr) – win by using the same (sometimes unfair) tactics ➢ Mary always arrived early and got the best parking space, so he decided to arrive even earlier and beat her at her own game. ➢ νικώ κάποιον με τα ίδια του τα χέρια, πιθύνω

12.148 give the game away (expr) – reveal a secret ➢ He told his son he was planning a surprise party for his mother, but the little boy gave the game away when he asked her if she was going to wear her party dress. ➢ «ξώνω τη δουλειά, προδίδω τα σχέδια

12.149 know the score (expr) – is aware of the situation ➢ I know the score: if I don’t work hard this year, I will fail my exams. ➢ γνωρίζω το αποτέλεσμα, είμαι ενήμερος για την κατάσταση
12.150 score an own goal (expr) – 1. do sth that produces the opposite result to what you wanted • He scored an own goal when he stopped customers looking through the magazines in his shop: his magazine sales dropped immediately. 2. (literal meaning) – shoot a goal into your own team’s goal by mistake • The ball bounced off the goalkeeper’s head by mistake and he scored an own goal.

12.151 throw in the towel (expr) – give up, admit defeat • Refusing to throw in the towel, the team came from behind and won the game 3-2.

12.152 be on the right track (expr) – doing something in the correct way • The results of the experiments proved that I had been on the right track all that time.

12.153 track record (n phr) – (C) past performance (e.g., one’s achievements and/or failures) • Janet has an impressive track record in advertising.

12.154 blow the whistle (on) (expr) – reveal, tell someone about something wrong or illegal that is happening • I knew she was responsible for what had happened but I didn’t want to blow the whistle on her.
13.13 betray (v) – be disloyal to a friend/relative/colleague by not supporting them, telling others their secrets, etc. ➢ betrayal (n) ➢ προδοσία
13.12 cheat (v) – act dishonestly (e.g., in a test or while playing a game) in order to gain an advantage. ➢ cheat (n), cheating (n, adj) ➢ (σε εξετάσεις) αναγράφω, (στο χαρτί) κλέβω
13.11 ignore (v) – pay no attention to. ➢ I greeted her but she ignored me and walked away. ➢ ignorance (n), ignorant (adj) ➢ ανενόητο
13.10 share (v) – have or use something with another person. ➢ share (n) ➢ μοιράζομαι
13.09 represent (v) – act or speak for another person or group of people. ➢ She was chosen to represent the company at the international conference. ➢ representative (n), representation (n) ➢ αντιπροσώπος
13.08 exclude (v) – not include, keep out. ➢ It wasn’t too long ago that large companies discriminated against women by excluding them from top-paying jobs. ➢ exclusion (n), exclusive (adj), exclusively (adv) ➢ αποκλείω
13.07 donate (v) – give sth, esp. money, to a person or organisation in order to help them. ➢ He often donated both his time and his money to the local children’s hospital. ➢ donor (n), donation (n) ➢ δωρίζω, δωρίζω
13.06 contribute (to sth) (v) – help to cause sth. ➢ Drinking contributed to the ruin of the actor’s career. ➢ contribution (n), contributing (adj) ➢ συμβάλλω, συμβάλλω
13.05 tribe (n) – a group of people of the same race in a developing country who have the same language and customs. ➢ The Masai are one of the tribes that live in East Africa. ➢ tribal (adj) ➢ φυλή
13.04 society (n) – people in general, especially when thought of or considered as a group. ➢ The article discusses the role of women in today's society. ➢ social (adj), socially (adv), socialise (v) ➢ κοινωνία
13.03 organisation (n) – group of people with a special purpose, like a business or club. ➢ He works for an organisation that finds jobs for unemployed people. ➢ organise (v), organised (adj) ➢ οργανισμός
13.02 community (n) – the people living in a particular place. ➢ We’ve had a lot of help from the local community. ➢ κοινότητα
13.01 civilisation (n) – life in a place that has all the benefits of the modern world. ➢ civilised (adj) ➢ πολιτισμός
13.00 share (n) – people in general, especially when thought of or considered as a group. ➢ organise (v), organised (adj) ➢ οργανισμός

Vocabulary 1 (page 220)

A (page 220)

13.01 civilisation (n) – life in a place that has all the benefits of the modern world. ➢ civilised (adj) ➢ πολιτισμός
13.02 community (n) – the people living in a particular place. ➢ We’ve had a lot of help from the local community. ➢ κοινότητα
13.03 organisation (n) – group of people with a special purpose, like a business or club. ➢ He works for an organisation that finds jobs for unemployed people. ➢ organise (v), organised (adj) ➢ οργανισμός
13.04 society (n) – people in general, especially when thought of or considered as a group. ➢ The article discusses the role of women in today's society. ➢ social (adj), socially (adv), socialise (v) ➢ κοινωνία
13.05 tribe (n) – a group of people of the same race in a developing country who have the same language and customs. ➢ The Masai are one of the tribes that live in East Africa. ➢ tribal (adj) ➢ φυλή
13.21 stressful (adj) – causing stress, anxiety ● Exams can be stressful, both for students and their parents. ➞ stress (n, v), stressed (adj) ❖ aγχωτικός, όλος προκαταλήγεις ἄγχος

13.22 tense (adj) – 1. (of people) anxious, nervous, stressed out ● It’s natural to feel tense before a big job interview. 2. (of situations or events) causing stress, anxiety ● The tennis match will be tense as the two players are well-matched and highly competitive. ➞ tenseness (n), tension (n), tense (v), tensely (adv) ❖ 1. ανάσχυσης, σε υπερέντοση, αγχωμένος 2. τεταμένος, σε ἐντάση

13.23 uneasy (adj) – anxious, troubled, nervous ● It always makes her feel uneasy when the phone rings at 3 a.m. ➞ uneasiness (n), uneasily (adv) ❖ ανασίωσης, τοπαγμένος

13.24 impose (v) – 1. impose sth on sb: make sb endure sth unpleasant ● I’d like to stay, but I don’t want to impose on you. 2. impose sth on sb: make sb endure sth unpleasant or unwelcome ● The government imposed heavy taxes on its citizens. ❖ 1. εμποτίζω 2. επιβάλλω

13.25 interact (with sb) (v) – (people) communicate with, relate to or have an effect on sb ● School helps children learn how to interact with others. ➞ interaction (n) ❖ επικοινωνία

13.26 interfere (v) – get involved in sth which has nothing to do with you ● Don’t interfere when they are having an argument. ➞ interference (n) ❖ επέμβαση

13.27 interrupt (v) – stop an activity for a period of time ● I hate it when they interrupt me while I’m speaking. ➞ interruption (n) ❖ διακόπτω

13.28 intrude (v) – enter without being invited or welcome ● I didn’t know you were in a meeting. I don’t want to intrude so I’ll come back later when you’re not busy. ➞ intrusion (n), intruder (n), intrusive (adj) ❖ μπερδητικής, ενοχλημένης, μπερδητικός, ενοχλημένα με την παρουσία μου

13.29 invade (v) – enter in large numbers, esp. so as to attack or take control of sth ● The soldiers invaded the enemy camp during the night. ➞ invasion (n), invasive (adj) ❖ εισβάλλω

Note: invade sb’s privacy (expr) – ● Don’t open my door without knocking first; you’re invading my privacy. ❖ παραβιάζω τον ιδιωτικό χώρο κάποιου

13.31 banner (n) – long piece of material or paper on which sth is written ● Many people in the crowd were carrying banners with the slogans ‘peace’ and ‘save the world’. ❖ ναό

13.32 chant (n) – words repeated rhythmically and continuously (used e.g. in football matches by the fans, in church by the priest or by demonstrators) ● The demonstrators’ chants for more money and more jobs got louder as they marched towards the city centre. ➞ chant (v), chanting (n) ❖ ψαλμοδία (εκκλησίας), τραγούδη

13.33 enemy (n) – someone who hates you ● Rich people often have more enemies than friends. ❖ εχθρός

13.34 nature (n) – (of a person) character ● It’s not in his nature to get drunk at a party. ● natural (adj) ❖ χαρακτηριστικός, φυσικός

13.35 nickname (n) – name used informally instead of sb’s real name ● Her nickname at school was Blondie because of her blonde hair. ❖ παρατσούκλι

13.36 sign (n) – a movement of the body to express a command ● She put her finger to her mouth as a sign that he shouldn’t speak. ➞ signal (n, v) ❖ σημάδι, ἔνδειξη

13.37 characteristic (adj) – typical ● His enthusiasm for this project is characteristic of the way he works; he really throws himself into everything he does. ➞ characteristic (n), characterise (v), characteristically (adv) ❖ χαρακτηριστικός

13.38 emotional (adj) – showing your feelings ● He became very emotional when he said goodbye to his children, but he tried to hide his tears. ➞ emotion (n) ❖ συναισθηματικός

13.39 humble (adj) – ordinary, simple ● She prefers riding around town on a humble bicycle rather than having to spend a lot of money maintaining a car. ➞ humble (v), humbly (adv) ❖ τανειός, απίθανος

13.40 natural (adj) – normal ● It’s natural to feel nervous before an exam. ➞ nature (n) ❖ φυσικός

13.41 personal (adj) – concerning yourself, private ● I need to speak to my boss about a personal matter. ➞ person (n) ❖ προσωπικός

13.42 display (n) – show, presentation ● The gymnast’s performance was a perfect display of control, strength and skill. ➞ display (v) ❖ επέμβαση

13.43 on patrol (prep phr) – who keep watch over an area by walking or driving around at regular intervals ● The soldiers on patrol were relieved to find no sign of the enemy in the area. ➞ patrol (n, v) ❖ που κάνει περιπολία

13.44 right (n) – what you are entitled to do or have ● Young people should have the right to choose what they want to study. ❖ δικαίωμα
13.45 sense (of) – feeling of • The island had no electricity and no cars and left me with a sense of what life was like hundreds of years ago. ➤ sense (v) ❖ αίσθηση

13.46 signal (n) – an action, noise or movement that sends a particular message to someone • Wait here until you hear the signal. ➤ signal (v) ❖ σήμα, σινιάλο

13.47 symbol (n) – sth that represents sth else • The dove is a symbol of peace. / This ring is a symbol of my love for you. ➤ symbolise (v), symbolic (adj) ❖ σύμβολο

13.48 status symbol (n) – a possession that shows someone is very wealthy or has a high position in society • The expensive sports car was just a status symbol for him. He didn’t really need it. ❖ κάτι που προσδίδει σε κάποιον κοινωνικό κύρος, τεκμήριο κοινωνικού γοήτρου

13.49 territory (n) – area that a person or animal considers their own and will defend when sb/sth else enters it • The cat hisses at every animal that enters its territory / The soldiers crossed the border into enemy territory ➤ territorial (adj) ❖ εδάφος, περιοχή

Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 222)

13.50 break off (phr v) – (of an engagement) end suddenly • She broke off their engagement when he started drinking heavily. ❖ τελειώνω μια σχέση

13.51 bring back (phr v) – return to the mind, remind me of • The song brought back memories of my school days. ❖ επαναφέρω στη μνήμη

13.52 burst in (phr v) – enter suddenly • The police burst in and found the men hiding the drugs under the bed. ❖ εισέρχομαι ορμητικά

13.53 call by (phr v) – visit on the way to somewhere else • He said he might call by later on his way home from work. ❖ πραγματοποιώ σύντομη επίσκεψη

13.54 check out (phr v) – go to see sth to find out if it is good • We checked out the new Italian restaurant last night. It was quite expensive. ❖ επιθεωρώ, τσεκάρω

13.55 get along with (phr v) – like, have a friendly relationship with • I get along well with all my sister’s friends ❖ τα πάω καλά

13.56 get out of (phr v) – leave (place, situation) • If I don’t get out of the house today, I’ll go crazy. ❖ ξεφεύγω

13.57 give in (phr v) – surrender, stop fighting and do what sb wants • Concerned for the lives of the passengers on the hijacked plane, the government decided to give in to the terrorists’ demands. ❖ παραδίδομαι σε καθιστικό, υποκύπτω

13.58 go by (phr v) – (informal) be known as • Does anyone here know a man who goes by the name of ‘Scarface’. ❖ ακούω στο Όνομα, ονομάζομαι

13.59 make up (phr v) – consist of • The team is made up of players from Brazil, France and Spain. ❖ συγκροτώ/συγκροτούμαι, αποτελώ

Prepositions 1 (page 222)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advantage</td>
<td>take advantage of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take your word</td>
<td>take your word for it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/get involved</td>
<td>be/get involved in sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>know about sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put effort</td>
<td>put effort into sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respond</td>
<td>respond to sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>hand in hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open/public</td>
<td>open to the public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escape</td>
<td>escape from sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the secret</td>
<td>the secret of sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.60  take advantage (of sth/sb) (idm) – use sth/sb for one's own good (sometimes unfairly or at sb's expense) • Studying in Spain is a great opportunity. I hope you take advantage of it. / He'll never pay you back. Can't you see he's trying to take advantage of you? ✤ εκμεταλλεύομαι

13.61  take sb's word for sth (idm) – accept that what sb says is true or correct • I have no way of knowing what time you got to work this morning, so I'll just have to take your word for it. ✤ στηρίζομαι στο λόγο κάποιου

13.62  get involved in (expr) – take part in or be connected with something • They were arguing about money but I didn't want to get involved. ➤ involve (v), involvement (n) ✤ μιμηθώ σε κάτι, ανακατεύωμαι

13.63  put effort into (expr) – try hard to make sth happen/work, try hard to make sth good/successful • He put a lot of effort into his geography project and came top of his class. ✤ αφιερώνω πολλή δουλειά σε κάτι, καταβάλλω υπεράνθρωπη προσπάθεια

13.64  respond (to) (v) – answer • I asked him how he was feeling, but he didn't respond. ✤ απαντώ

13.65  hand in hand (expr) – while holding hands • The couple were seen walking hand in hand as they strolled along the beach. ✤ πιασμένοι χέρι χέρι

13.66  bring about (phr v) – cause to happen • The discovery of electricity brought about great improvements to people's lives. ✤ επιφέρω

13.67  join up (phr v) – become a member of the army, navy etc • At the beginning of World War 1, many young men joined up early without realising what was ahead of them. ✤ πηγαίνω φαντάρος, κατατάσσομαι

13.68  rounds (pl n) – the usual tour a doctor makes to see his patients • You can't see the doctor; he's doing his rounds. ✤ σειρά ιατρικών επισκέψεων

13.69  individual (adj) – single, separate • It's not enough to learn the meaning of individual words in English; you also need to know the phrases in which they commonly occur. ✤ χωριστός, μεμονωμένος

13.70  competing (adj) – trying to win against sb else • The twins' parents tried to deal with their competing demands for attention. ➤ compete (v), competition (n)

13.71  contending (adj) – trying to win or struggle against difficulties • The athletes were contending for the championship. ➤ contend (v) ✤ που μάχεται, που αγωνίζεται

13.72  ask after (phr v) – ask about sb's health, news, etc • Remember to ask after your cousin when you telephone Aunt Jane. ✤ ρωτώ για κάποιον

13.73  normality (n) – the state of being normal • Things are slowly returning to normality after the snow storm last week. ➤ normal (adj) ✤ ομαλότητα, κανονικότητα

13.74  rule (n) – order, instruction or regulation meant to guide people's behaviour • Our mother has a strict rule about not watching TV while we eat dinner. ➤ rular (n), ruling (n, adj), rule (v) ✤ κανονιστικά

13.75  passion (n) – sth (e.g., an activity or object) for which sb shows great enthusiasm or love • Opera and theatre are his passions. ➤ passionate (adj), passionately (adv) ✤ πάθος
A (page 226)

13.76 anxious (adj) – 1. be anxious to do/for sth: be eager to do sth or for sth to happen, look forward to sth with eager anticipation ● She’s anxious to start her new job as it’s something she’s dreamt about all her life. 2. be anxious about sth: be worried or nervous about sth ● He’s anxious about the final exam in French as it’s his weakest subject. ➢ anxiety (n)

13.77 curious (adj) – always questioning

13.78 nervous (adj) – He felt very nervous during the job interview.

13.79 patient (adj) – able to keep calm ● Teachers must be very patient - some pupils learn more slowly than others.

13.80 shy (adj) – afraid and unwilling to speak in front of others ● As a young child, he was so shy that he barely spoke a word to anyone except his immediate family.

13.81 briefly (adv) – using very few words ● He had a few moments to briefly explain what had happened and then he rushed off to another meeting.

13.82 closely (adv) – very carefully ● The policeman watched the man closely in case he tried to escape.

13.83 momentarily (adv) – for a very short time ● She paused momentarily before answering him.

13.84 nearly (adv) – almost ● She nearly fainted when I told her what had happened.

13.85 shortly (adv) – in a little time ● The show will be starting shortly, so we’d better hurry.

B (page 226)

13.86 briefly (adv) – of

13.87 nearly (adv) – almost

C (page 226)

13.88 group (n) – number of people, things or organisations connected in a particular way ● A group of students have been chosen to enter the competition.

13.89 political party (n) – (C) group of people with the same political goals and ideas ● Which political party do you think will win the next election, the Labour party or the Conservative party?

13.90 union (n) – group formed by people or organisations uniting for a specific cause ● The National Union of Teachers is demanding higher wages.

D (page 226)

13.91 cross (v) – put one leg or finger on top of another ● Ella sat down and crossed her legs.

13.92 fold (my arms) (v) – cross my arms over my chest ● I sometimes fold my arms when I feel cold.

13.93 hug (v) – put your arms around someone because you care about them ● I hugged my mum, gave her a kiss and got on the school bus.

13.94 pat (n) – a light, quick touch using the open flat part of the hand ● She gave him a pat on the back to congratulate him.

13.95 shake (hands) (v) – move sb’s hand up and down when you meet them or when you make an agreement ● He stood up and shook my hand down when you make an agreement.

13.96 argumentative (adj) – liking to argue ● The argumentative player was thrown out of the game for quarrelling with the referee.

13.97 cooperative (adj) – helpful, willing ● She found her new colleagues cooperative and always willing to help.

13.98 outgoing (adj) – friendly, sociable ● Sue is popular because she’s such a warm and outgoing person.

13.99 outspoken (adj) – open and honest about stating opinions ● Theresa is an outspoken person who always says exactly what she is thinking.

13.100 stubbornly (adv) – strong-willed ● That child is as stubborn as a mule; she insists on getting her own way.
13.101 talkative (adj) – liking to talk a lot • She’s very talkative, so don’t worry – there won’t be any uncomfortable silences. ➢ talk (v, n) αναπαύομαι

13.102 considerate (adj) – thoughtful, careful not to hurt or bother others • She’s a kind and considerate person who always thinks of others’ feelings. ➢ consideration (n), consider (v), considerately (adv). ➢ Opp: inconsiderate (adj) διακριτικός, αφρός, ευγενικός

13.103 generous (adj) – willing to give more of sth (e.g., time, money, kindness) than is expected or needed • It was generous of you to give so much money to UNICEF this year. ➢ generosity (n), generously (adv) γενναιόδωρος

13.104 grateful (adj) – thankful, full of gratitude • They were grateful to the doctor for saving their child’s life. ➢ gratitude (n), gratefully (adv) συμπαθητικός

13.105 likeable (adj) – easy to like • She found her new tennis coach friendly and very likeable. ➢ like (v) αξιαγάπητος, συμπαθητικός, αρεστός

13.106 sympathetic (adj) – feeling or showing sympathy for others; understanding • The teacher was very sympathetic about my family problems, and she agreed to let me take the test another day. ➢ sympathy (n), sympathise (v), sympathetically (adv) γενναιόδωρος, ευγενικός

13.107 tolerant (adj) – patient, open-minded; willing to allow sb to do sth without criticizing or punishing them • The tolerant father never shouted at his children, even when they were naughty. ➢ tolerance (n), tolerate (v), tolerantly (adv). Opp: intolerant ανεκτικός, διακριτικός, ευγενικός

13.108 arrogant (adj) – too proud and self-important, feeling more important than others • He was an arrogant, self-important person who did little to hide the fact that he thought he was better than everyone else around him. ➢ arrogance (n), arrogantly (adv) αρεστός, αρεστάνας

13.109 conceited (adj) – snobbish, arrogant, having too high an opinion of yourself • Despite his good looks and intelligence, he is not at all conceited. ➢ conceit (n) ➢ Opp: modest γεμάτος επάρση, φαντασμάτων

13.110 mean (adj) – not generous, not willing to spend money • No one can accuse the boss of being mean because everyone in the company receives an annual pay rise. ➢ γεμάτος επάρση, μικροηνέργης

13.111 thoughtful (adj) – ignoring or not thinking about other people’s needs, feelings and desires • Forgetting to come home in time for his son’s birthday party was thoughtless of him. ➢ thoughtlessness (n), thoughtlessly (adv). ➢ Opp: thoughtful ανεκτικός, επιστημονικός, ανεμοτικός

13.112 timid (adj) – shy, easily frightened • The boss’s new assistant seems as timid as a mouse; she’ll need to become more confident if she wants to keep her job. ➢ timidity (n), timidly (adv) δειλός, ἀσυλλόγιστος

13.113 association (n) – a formal group of people who have something in common • She’s a member of the National Association of School Psychologists. ➢ associate (n, v), associated (adj) συμματικός, σωματείο, σύλλογος, συνέδριο

13.114 committee (n) – a group of people that makes decisions on behalf of an organisation or other people • Her father is on a committee that advises the government about developments in science. ➢ επιτροπή

13.115 company (n) – being with a person or people • Elderly people often enjoy the company of young children. ➢ companion (n), accompany (v) συμπαθητικός

13.116 panel (n) – small group of people brought together to decide or judge sth, committee • The panel of judges included several famous writers and artists. ➢ το έργο, ομάδα ανθρώπων η οποία έχει και παρέα συζήτησης ή αποφάσεως (στα εναλλακτικά, σε συνέδριο)

Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 228)

13.117 hang around (phr v) – stay in the same place, wait (without a particular purpose) • Why are you hanging around here? Go for a walk and get some exercise. ➢ καθημερινά, τριγυρίζω, περιφέρομαι

13.118 join up (phr v) – become a member (of the armed forces or another organisation) • He joined up just as World War I was starting. ➢ παρέα

13.119 look down on (phr v) – have a low opinion of sth/sb, regard sth/sb as inferior • The director and his wife are the most arrogant people I have ever met; they look down on almost everyone. ➢ περιφερομένω

13.120 make up (phr v) – be friends again after a quarrel • I hate to see you and Jean arguing. It’s time to forget your differences and make up. ➢ το έργο, ομάδα ανθρώπων η οποία έχει και παρέα συζήτησης ή αποφάσεως (στα εναλλακτικά, σε συνέδριο)
13.121 put on (phr v) – get dressed in, wear • Everyone will put on their best clothes to attend the wedding next week. φορώ
13.122 rub out (phr v) – erase, remove or wipe away by rubbing (e.g., chalk on a blackboard) • Our teacher prefers us to write our essays in pencil so we can rub out our mistakes. αφθίνω
13.123 stand for (phr v) – (often in negative sentences) put up with, tolerate • I'm afraid I must insist that you leave. I will not stand for such rudeness in my own home! ανέχομαι, υποφέρω
13.124 stand back (phr v) – remain at a distance, look on and do nothing • All they could do was stand back and wait as the fire brigade attempted to save their burning home. παρακολουθώ χωρίς να επεμβαίνω
13.125 take (sb) off (phr v) – imitate, copy • She made everybody laugh by taking off the Queen. μιμούμαι, κοροϊδεύω
13.126 take over (phr v) – take control of sth, become responsible for • Mr Ford's daughter has taken over the family business. ➣ takeover (n)
13.127 go into detail (phr) – explain in depth • She didn't go into detail, so I'm not exactly sure what happened. μπαίνω σε λεπτομέρειες
13.128 by chance (phr) – by accident, without being planned • We met by chance - I was walking home when I saw her car at the side of the road. τυχαία
13.129 look on the bright side (idm) – be optimistic or cheerful • Look on the bright side. Now that you're unemployed, you can take a long summer holiday. βλέπω τα πράγματα ρόδινα, είμαι αισιόδοξος
13.130 in public (expr) – with people around • She's polite to her mother in public, but she's very rude to her at home. ➣ opp: in private δημοσίως
13.131 out of sight (phr) – not visible, unable to be seen • They stood on the platform and waved until the train was out of sight. ➣ opp: in sight εκτός θέας, αθέατα
13.132 trust (sb with) (v) – feel sure that sb will not disappoint you and that sb will be careful with sth • You can trust John with your car; he's a careful driver. ➣ trust (n), trustworthy (adj) εμπιστεύομαι, αναθέτω
13.133 on sb's account (idm) – for sb’s sake, because of sb • I can take a taxi home. Please don’t feel you have to leave on my account. για χάρη κάποιου

You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

Prepositions 2 (page 228)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>top</td>
<td>at the top of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detail</td>
<td>go into detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chance</td>
<td>by chance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bright side</td>
<td>look on the bright side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public</td>
<td>in public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sight</td>
<td>out of sight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>at the back of (a room)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trust</td>
<td>trust sb with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my account</td>
<td>on my account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side</td>
<td>on my/your side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manner</td>
<td>in a (friendly) manner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)

You are probably familiar with most of the phrases in the chart. Following are entries for the ones that you might need help with because they are more idiomatic. (If you need further help, consult a dictionary.)
Idioms (page 232)

13.134 swallow your pride (idm) – ignore your feelings and do sth embarrassing • When he couldn’t pay his electricity bill, he had to swallow his pride and borrow the money from a friend. ➤ καταπίνω την υπερηφάνεια μου, σκύβω το κεφάλι

13.135 close to your heart (idm) – very important to you • The Make-a-Wish Foundation is a charity that is close to my heart. ➤ που μιλάει στην καρδιά μου

13.136 add insult to injury (idm) – make a bad situation worse • First no one remembered it was my birthday; then, to add insult to injury, my boss fired me. ➤ πάω από το κακό στο χειρότερο

13.137 clear the air (idm) – deal openly with a problem to solve it • I know that we don’t agree on the matter, but let’s clear the air and try to find a solution. ➤ (καθομιλουμένη) καθαρίζω την ατμόσφαιρα (μετά από καβγά)

13.138 a shoulder to cry on (idm) – emotional support in times of anxiety • Everyone needs a shoulder to cry on when they feel sad. ➤ κάποιοι να μου συμπαρασταθεί (να με στηρίξετε) σε δύσκολες στιγμές

13.139 grin from ear to ear (idm) – smile widely • She was grinning from ear to ear when she heard the good news. ➤ grin (n, v), grinning (adj) ➤ χαμογελώ πλατιά

Synonyms (page 232)

13.140 idle (adj) – avoiding work, lazy • He’s an idle man who hasn’t worked in years. ➤ τεμπέλης

13.141 ill-mannered (adj) – impolite, rude • She refused to baby-sit for the naughty, ill-mannered child. ➤ αγενής

13.142 obstinate (adj) – stubborn, insistent • Obstinate people rarely change their mind, even if they’re wrong! ➤ obstinacy (n), obstinately (adv) ➤ ισχυρογνώμων, πεισματάρης

13.143 selfish (adj) – only thinking or caring about yourself • Don’t be selfish; please share your chocolate with your sister. ➤ selfishly (adv), selfishness (n) ➤ Opp: unselfish ➤ εγωιστής
Participle Clauses
Verbs + that clause
Cleft Sentences, Adverbs, no matter

Vocabulary 1 (page 236)

A (page 236)
14.01 flock (n) – group of birds, sheep or goats • As we made our way up the mountain, we came across a large flock of sheep blocking the road. ➞ flock (v) ☞ κοπάδι (για πρόβατα, γάλακτα, πουλιά)
14.02 herd (n) – group of animals of a single kind which live and feed together (e.g., cattle, elephants) • The safari came across several herds of elephants, zebras, and giraffes. ➞ herd (v) ☞ αγέλη
14.03 pack (n) – group of animals that hunt together (especially dogs, wolves) • The pack of wolves howled at the moon. ☞ κοπάδι (κυνηγετικών κοπαδιών), αγέλη (λύκων)
14.04 pride (n) – group of lions or peacocks • We saw a pride of lions at the zoo. ☞ αγέλη (ψαριών), πλήθος (λιονταριών)
14.05 shoal (n) – large group of fish that swim together, school of fish • The scuba divers were fascinated by the shoal of fish that were swimming around them. ☞ κοπάδι (ψαριών)
14.06 swarm (n) – large group of insects (e.g., bees, locusts) which move in a group and make a loud buzzing noise • He was allergic to bees, so when he came across a swarm of them he was terrified. ➞ swarm (v), swarming (adj) ☞ σμήνος (μελισσών, ακρίδων)

B (page 236)
14.07 endangered (adj) – (plants, animals) in danger of being harmed or destroyed, facing extinction • The Giant Panda is an endangered species. ➞ endanger (v), danger (n) ☞ απειλούμενος με αφανισμό, υπό εξάφνηση, ποινικός εκδίκησις
critical (adj) ➞ critical (adj) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.08 extinct (adj) – (of living creatures) no longer in existence • Dinosaurs have been extinct for millions of years. ➞ extinction (n) ☞ αφανισμένο (είδος), είδος που έχει εκλείψει
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.09 nocturnal (adj) – (animals) active at night • We don’t often see an owl during the day as most are nocturnal. ☞ νυκτόβια
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.10 threaten (v) – be a danger to, seem likely to hurt • Financial problems threatened to end their marriage. / The houses on the edge of the forest were threatened by the approaching forest fire. ➞ threat (n), threatened (adj), threatening (adj), threateningly (adv) ➞ απειληδο

C (page 236)
14.11 vulnerable (adj) – easily hurt or damaged, unprotected against attack • Young animals are more vulnerable when they are abandoned by their mothers. ➞ vulnerability (n) ☞ ευάκιστος, τρωπός
critical (adj) ➞ critical (adj) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.12 balance (n) – a situation where different things are equally important • You should try to keep a balance between work and family life. ➞ balance (v), balanced (adj) ➞ ισορροπία
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.13 ecosystem (n) – all the plants and animals in a particular area and the relationships between them • The effects of the forest fires on the ecosystem were disastrous. ➞ οικοσύστημα
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.14 habitat (n) – the natural home of a plant or animal • When they released the bear into the forest, they knew that it would be happy in its natural habitat. ➞ natural habitats ➞ φυσικό περιβάλλον
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.15 reserve (n) – area (on land or sea) which is protected by law to protect the plants and animals that live there • When we were on holiday, we visited a nature reserve and saw lots of beautiful wild animals. ➞ προστατευόμενη/ υποδιοίκηση περιοχή
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία

D (page 236)
14.16 critically (adv) – very seriously • He was critically injured in a road accident and spent three months in hospital. ➞ critical (adj) ➞ οστεοτροχία
Note: We often say: critically ill/injured/important/endangered, in critical condition
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.17 effectively (adv) – in effect, practically speaking, actually • He wouldn’t let her out of the house; effectively, she was a prisoner in her own home. ➞ πραγματικά, στην ουσία
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.18 entirely (adj) – completely • You’re right. It was entirely my fault. ➞ entire (adj) ➞ πλήθος, τείχειος
critical (adv) ➞ critical (adv) ➞ οστεοτροχία
14.19 severely (adj) – extremely, seriously • The accident left him severely disabled; he would never walk again. / His parents punished him severely for taking the car without permission. ➞ απειληδο, αυστηρά, πάρα πολύ
14.20 **vitality (adj)** – really, extremely

- Computer skills are vitally important in today’s competitive job market.
- vitality (n), vital (adj) ❖ ζωικά

**E** (page 237)

14.21 **adapt (v)** – change to suit new circumstances

- It took a few months to adapt to her new surroundings, but she’s now quite happy in her new apartment. ➢ adaptation (n), adaptable (adj)

14.22 **affect (v)** – cause someone or something to change

- Sometimes young people have to make decisions that affect the rest of their lives. ❖ επηρεάζω

14.23 **blend in (v)** – (animals / people) be so similar in appearance to the natural surroundings that sb/sth is difficult to see.

- blend (n) ➢ γίνομαι ένα με το περιβάλλον

14.24 **evolve (v)** – develop gradually and naturally

- Darwin made popular the idea that Man evolved from apes. ➢ evolution (n) ➢ ξεξείλισσομαι.

14.25 **flourish (v)** – grow/develop into sth strong and healthy

- Children flourish when they receive love and attention. / Business flourishes when the economy is strong. ❖ ανθώ, ακμάζω

14.26 **roam (v)** – wander or move around an area with no particular destination

- Packs of wolves roam these hills. ❖ περιπλανώμαι

**F** (page 237)

14.27 **breed (n)** – type, kind (of animal)

- My favourite breed of dog is a Labrador. ➢ breed (v), breeding (n) ❖ είδος, ράτσα

14.28 **fauna** (pl n) – animal life

- The national park was established to protect tigers and other endangered fauna. ➢ Opp: flora (n) ➢ πανίδα

14.29 **flora** (pl n) – plant life

- The botanist specialises in orchids and other tropical flora. ➢ florist (n), floral (adj).

14.30 **pet (n)** – animal kept in the home

- Cats and dogs are the most popular pets. ➢ pet (v) ➢ χαροκοπία, οικόσκα ζώο

14.31 **species (n)** – kind of plant, animal or other living thing

- The region is home to robins, sparrows and other common bird species. ➢ είδος.

**Note:** species is both the singular and plural form.

**G** (page 237)

14.32 **parasite (n)** – a small animal or plant that lives off another animal or plant

- Fleas are parasites that live on dogs and cats. ➢ parasitic (adj) ➢ παράσιτο

14.33 **predator (n)** – animal that attacks and kills others for food

- Zebras have to watch out for lions, cheetahs and other predators. ❖ αρπακτικό ϊώ

14.34 **prey (n)** – animal that a predator hunts for food

- The eagle flew overhead, hunting for field mice and other small prey. ➢ prey on (phr v) ➢ άπεια, βορά

14.35 **victim (n)** – sb who has had sth bad happen to them, or sb who has been hurt or killed

- The victims of the attack were taken to hospital. ➢ victimise (v) ➢ θύμα

14.36 **food web** (n phr) – network that involves eating and being eaten; similar to food chain

- Man, the ultimate predator, is always at the top of the food web. ❖ τροφικά αλυσίδα, αλυσίδα διατροφής

**H** (page 237)

14.37 **bark (v)** – (dog/s) make a short, sharp noise

- The dog barks every time a stranger passes the house. ➢ bark (n), barking (adj) ➢ γάβγίζω

14.38 **buzz (v)** – make a sound like a bee

- The bees were buzzing around the flowers in the garden. ➢ buzz (n) ➢ βουίζω

14.39 **grunt (v)** – make a sound like a pig

- The pigs grunted happily when they saw the farmer bringing their food. ➢ grunt (n) ➢ γρυλλίζω

14.40 **hiss (v)** – make a sound like a long ‘s’

- The cat hissed when it saw the dog. ➢ hiss (n), hissing (adj) ➢ σφυρίζω

14.41 **howl (v)** – make a long, loud noise like the cry of a dog or a wolf

- The dog howled in the garden, hoping to be allowed in to the house. / The wind howled.

- ουρλιάζω

14.42 **neigh (v)** – make a noise like a horse

- The horse neighed when it saw its owner coming.

- χρημετιζω, χημεναριζω

14.43 **roar (v)** – make a loud, deep cry

- I got a fright when the lion roared at the zoo. ➢ roar (v) ➢ βροχξμιαί

14.44 **squeak (v)** – make a short, high-pitched cry or sound

- The mouse squeaked when it saw the cat.

- squeak (n), squeakiness (n), squeaky (adj) ➢ τσιρίζω
14.45  **carry off** (phr v) – grab and take away • She picked up the child and carried him off to the other room.

❖ παίρνω, απάγω

14.46  **come out** (phr v) – solve itself • Don’t worry; everything will come out all right in the end.

❖ επιλύομαι

14.47  **die out** (phr v) – become fewer in number until it no longer exists, become extinct • Dinosaurs died out millions of years ago.

❖ εκλείπω, εξαφανίζομαι σταδιακά

14.48  **get at** (phr v) – reach • Put the knife where the children can’t get at it.

❖ φθάνω, αγγίζω

14.49  **get in** (phr v) – collect • We’d better get some wood in if we’re going to have a fire.

❖ μαζεύω, εναποθηκεύω

14.50  **get (sth) over** (phr v) – make sth clear, make sb understand sth • Try to get it over to him that he must study harder.

❖ κάνω κάτι κατανοητό

14.51  **go for** (phr v) – attack • The dog went for the postman and bit his leg.

❖ επιτίθεμαι

14.52  **go under** (phr v) – sink beneath the surface (of a body of water) • If the two boats run into each other, there’s a good chance that one or both of them will go under.

❖ βυθίζομαι

14.53  **hang on** (phr v) – grip firmly, hold on tightly • The monkey hung on to the branch with its tail and one leg.

❖ κρατώ σφιχτά

14.54  **live on** (phr v) – continue to survive • Although she died a year ago, her memory lives on in our hearts.

❖ παραμένω ζωντανός στη μνήμη κάποιου, ζει η ανάμνησή μου

---

**Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 238)**

**Prepositions 1 (page 238)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>home</td>
<td>home to sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td>by the window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garden</td>
<td>in the garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>leave for (somewhere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>island</td>
<td>on an island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coast</td>
<td>off the coast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time to time</td>
<td>from time to time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seaside</td>
<td>at the seaside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conscious</td>
<td>conscious of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear/mind</td>
<td>bear in mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fall off sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>on the river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be back</td>
<td>be back in (10 minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>head for somewhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.55 leave for (phr v) – leave where you are and go to
• Tom’s already gone; he left for the train station five minutes ago. ❖ φεύγω για κάποιον προορισμό
14.56 off the coast (expr) – in the sea near a piece of land • Hydra is an island off the coast of the Peloponnese. ❖ α’ ακτή του, σε απόσταση από την ακτή
14.57 from time to time (idm) – occasionally, now and then, once in a while • She sees her old school friend from time to time, but usually no more than three or four times a year. ❖ πότε-πότε
14.58 conscious (of) (adj) – aware of, understand • He was conscious of her growing boredom and tried to tell a few jokes. ➣ consciously (adv), unconscious (adj)
❖ συνειδηθηκός, ένοχος
14.59 bear in mind (idm) – consider, think about • Make sure you bear in mind the cost of travel and housing before you decide to study in another country. ❖ ημετέρως υπόψη
14.60 head for (phr v) – move in the direction of • Knowing that a special present was waiting for him, he left school and headed straight for home. ❖ κατευθύνομαι, τραβώ

Use of English Practice 1 (page 239)

Items 1-12

Most of the choices that accompany this passage have already appeared in previous sections. If you need help with them, review the sections referred to below.

1 B, D For A, see Phrasal Verbs 1. For C, see Vocabulary 1: B.

14.61 vanish (v) – disappear suddenly • When the magician lifted the cloth, the rabbit had vanished. Where had it gone? ➣ vanishing (adj) ❖ εξαφανίζομαι
14.62 disappear (v) – go out of sight, vanish • My pen has disappeared. I can’t remember where I left it. ➣ disappearance (n) ❖ εξαφανίσεως
2 D For B, see Vocabulary 1: E. For C, see Vocabulary 1, Unit 12.

14.63 wander (v) – walk slowly without going in a particular direction • The boy wandered off and got lost in the woods. ❖ απομακρύνομαι, ἄφασμα
3 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: H.

4 B For A, see Vocabulary 1: E.

14.64 turn into (phr v) – become, change • Our camping trip turned into a nightmare when Jane got lost in the woods. / The ugly caterpillar turned into a beautiful butterfly. ❖ μετατρέπω

5 For D, see Vocabulary 1: F.

6 A, C For B, see Vocabulary 1: C.

14.65 state (n) – condition • He has been in a state of shock since he heard about the accident. ❖ κατάσταση

6 A, C For B, see Vocabulary 1: C.

14.66 position (n) – place where sth is located • She’s always changing the position of her furniture around; this month the sofa is under the window. ➣ position (v) ❖ θέσω, τοποθέτηση

7 B, D For A, see Vocabulary 1: E. For C, see Vocabulary 1, Unit 13.

14.67 provoke (v) – 1. cause a particular reaction in sb/sth • His rude behaviour provoked a lot of anger at the meeting. 2. make a person or animal angry or annoyed • If you provoke a dog, it will attack. 3. provoke sb to do sth/into doing sth (v phr) – make sb do sth by continually annoying them or treating them badly • His selfishness provoked her into leaving him. ➣ provocation (n) ❖ 1. προκατάθεση 2. ερεθισμός, προκατάθεση 3. αναγκάζω/εξωθώ και να κάνει κτ

14.68 tease (v) – 1. confuse or puzzle sb by presenting sb with a problem that is difficult to solve • The writer teased his readers by leaving them clues that made them think the wrong person was the murderer. 2. annoy sb by making jokes or laughing at • Stop teasing him about his weight; he’s getting upset. ➣ 1. μεπειράζω/να ζαλίζω, μπερδεύω 2. προκατάθεση προκατάθεση και να κάνει ΚΤ

8 A For D, see Vocabulary 1: G.

14.69 consumer (n) – sb who buys and uses goods or services • It’s a product that appeals to a wide range of consumers. ❖ καταναλωτής

9 C For A, B and D, see Vocabulary 1: G.

14.70 bait (n) – sth which attracts fish, birds, etc, to come near so they can be trapped or caught • Going fishing was relaxing enough, but she hated putting the live bait on the hook. ➣ bait (v) ❖ δύσκολο

10 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: D.

11 B, C For A, see Vocabulary 1: G.

14.71 sacrifice (n) – loss of sth for a good purpose • My parents made a lot of sacrifices to give me a private education. ➣ sacrifice (v), sacrificial (adj) ❖ θυσία

122
14.72 offering (n) – 1. sth given as a present to please sb • She bought him a chocolate cake as a peace offering after their argument. 2. sth some people in ancient times offered as a gift to a god they believed in • They sacrificed a lamb and left it on the hillside as an offering to their god. > offer (v, n)

14.73 succeed (v) – follow on after, replace sb • He succeeded Robert Smith as CEO of the company. > succession (n), successor (n)  

14.74 manage (v) – be able to do sth difficult • He managed to be the first person in his family to become a doctor.  

12 C, D For A, see Phrasal Verbs 1.

**Vocabulary 2 (page 242)**

**A (page 242)**

14.75 beak (n) – hard pointed part of a bird’s mouth • The woodpecker used its beak to make a hole in the tree bark.  

14.76 claw (n) – one of a series of pointed nails on the feet of some animals • The cat scratched me with its claws.  

14.77 feather (n) – one of the things that cover a bird’s body • The feathers of male birds are usually brighter and more colourful than the feathers of female birds.  

14.78 fur (n) – thick soft hair covering some animals • The dog’s fur was wet because she had taken it for its walk while it was raining.  

14.79 hoof (n) – hard lower part of the foot of certain animals • He gently picked up the horse’s foot and pulled a thorn from its hoof.  

14.80 horn (n) – one of usually two hard permanent outgrowths on the head of certain animals • The legendary unicorn had only one horn, while animals like cows, bulls, and goats have two.  

14.81 paw (n) – the foot of an animal that has claws or nails • Cats and dog have paws, while animals like horses and goats have hooves.  

14.82 tusk (n) – long, curved pointed tooth • Elephants and walruses have tusks.  

**B (page 242)**

14.83 berry (n) – small soft fruit • The birds in our garden eat the berries on our tree.  

14.84 branch (n) – arm-like part of a tree • If you want the tree to grow stronger, you’ll need to trim the branches at least once a year.  

**C (page 242)**

14.85 leaf (n) – flat, green part of a plant joined to its stems or branches • There were no leaves on the trees in their garden in winter.  

14.86 pollen (n) – sticky yellow powder produced by flowers • In spring, my car is always covered with a thin layer of pollen that comes from the flowering trees in the area.  

14.87 trunk (n) – (tree) thick main stem from which branches grow • Olive trees are known for their twisted and gnarled trunks.  

14.88 root (n) – (often plural) underground part of a plant that helps hold it firmly in the ground • The roots of a plant absorb water and nutrients from the soil.  

14.89 crawl (v) – 1. move or progress slowly • Insects were crawling all over the sandwich. 2. move forward on hands and knees • Babies usually crawl before they can walk.  

14.90 hunt (v) – to catch and kill animals to eat • It is natural for cats to hunt mice and birds.  

14.91 migrate (v) – (of animals) move from one place to another, according to the season • Swallows migrate to Africa when it starts to get cold in Europe.  

14.92 monitor (v) – check the progress or development of sth (eg, by watching, listening) • They monitored the birds to see where they migrated to every year.  

14.93 stroke (v) – to pass your hand over sth gently • The cat purred when the boy stroked his back.  

14.94 leaf (n) – flat, green part of a plant joined to its stems or branches • There were no leaves on the trees in their garden in winter.  

14.85 pollen (n) – sticky yellow powder produced by flowers • In spring, my car is always covered with a thin layer of pollen that comes from the flowering trees in the area.  

14.87 trunk (n) – (tree) thick main stem from which branches grow • Olive trees are known for their twisted and gnarled trunks.  

14.88 root (n) – (often plural) underground part of a plant that helps hold it firmly in the ground • The roots of a plant absorb water and nutrients from the soil.  

14.89 crawl (v) – 1. move or progress slowly • Insects were crawling all over the sandwich. 2. move forward on hands and knees • Babies usually crawl before they can walk.  

14.90 hunt (v) – to catch and kill animals to eat • It is natural for cats to hunt mice and birds.  

14.91 migrate (v) – (of animals) move from one place to another, according to the season • Swallows migrate to Africa when it starts to get cold in Europe.  

14.92 monitor (v) – check the progress or development of sth (eg, by watching, listening) • They monitored the birds to see where they migrated to every year.  

14.93 stroke (v) – to pass your hand over sth gently • The cat purred when the boy stroked his back.  

14.94 stroke (v) – to pass your hand over sth gently • The cat purred when the boy stroked his back.  

14.94 stroke (v) – to pass your hand over sth gently • The cat purred when the boy stroked his back.
D (page 242)
14.95 amphibian (n) – animals that live both in water and on land • Frogs are amphibians. ➢ amphibious (adj) ❖ αμφιβιο
14.96 insect (n) – small creature with six legs • Ants and flies are insects. ➢ ἐντόμο
14.97 mammal (n) – warm-blooded animal whose females are able to produce milk for their young • Did you know that dolphins and whales are marine mammals (rather than fish)? ➢ mammalian (adj) ❖ θηλυκό
14.98 reptile (n) – (C) cold-blooded animal that usually lays eggs and whose skin is covered by plates or fish-like scales • The dinosaurs were giant reptiles. ➢ reptilian (adj) ❖ ερπετό
14.99 wildlife (n) – animals and other things that live in the wild • Tourism has had a negative effect on the wildlife in the area. ➢ ζώα ξυλώδα και πανίδα

E (page 242)
14.100 acceleration (n) – increasing speed • My new car has great acceleration: it can go from 0 to 80 km per hour in 4 seconds. ➢ accelerate (v), accelerator (n) ❖ επιτάχυνση
14.101 rate (n) – a quantity/amount, frequency, or speed of sth (often expressed in relation to a specific unit of measurement) • The crime rate is rising again. / Her heart rate was 60 beats per minute. / The birth rate has remained steady. / The car sped down the highway at a rate of 70 miles per hour. ➢ rate (v), ratio (n) ❖ ταχύτητα,
14.102 ratio (n) – the amount or proportion of one thing compared to another • in our English class, girls outnumber boys by a ratio of 2 to 1. ❖ άνδρας
14.103 speed (n) – how fast sth is • You should reduce your speed when you’re driving through a town. ➢ speed (v) ❖ ταχύτητα

F (page 243)
14.104 bite (v) – cut or attack sth with teeth • Don’t bite your fingernails. ➢ bite (n) ❖ δακτύλω
14.105 kick (v) – hit sth with your foot • He kicked the football across the garden. ➢ kick (n) ❖ κίνηση
14.106 lay (v) – (of birds and insects) produce (eggs) • The cuckoo lays its eggs in the nest of other birds. ➢ γέννηση (αυγά)
14.107 peck (v) – (birds) strike or bite with the beak • Careful! If the parrot pecks at you, you might bleed. ➢ peck (n), peckish (adj) ❖ ραμφίζω, ταμπλώ

G (page 243)
14.110 calf (n) – young cow or elephant • A cow must first have a calf and then it can produce milk. ➢ calve (v), calves (plural of calf) ❖ γατάκι
14.111 chick (n) – young bird that has recently come out of its egg • In a few weeks the mother sparrow will begin teaching her chicks how to fly. ❖ νεοσσός
14.112 cub (n) – a young animal such as a bear, lion, etc • A bear and her cubs were sleeping in the cave. ➢ νεογνό
14.113 kitten (n) – young cat • The kittens grew into beautiful black cats. ❖ γατάκι
14.114 lamb (n) – young sheep • The field was full of sheep with their lambs. ➢ lamb (v) ❖ ραμφήσ
14.115 puppy (n) – young dog • My dog just gave birth to six puppies. ➢ κουτάβι, σκυλάκι

H (page 243)
14.116 bunch (n) – (of flowers) group held or fastened together • He gave her a bunch of flowers and a box of chocolates. ➢ μπουκέτο
14.117 collection (n) – a set of objects collected for their interest, value, or beauty • The museum has a large collection of Impressionist paintings. • John’s coin collection is very valuable. ➢ collector (n), collect (v), collectable (adj) ❖ συλλογή
14.118 hive (n) – place where bees live • He has a bee hive in his garden and collects his own honey. ➢ κυψέλη
14.119 nest (n) – place built by a bird to keep its eggs • The baby bird fell out of its nest, so I picked it up and kept it in a box until it was old enough to fly. ➢ nest (v) ❖ φωλιά
14.120 pile (n) – a number of things placed on top of each other • There is a pile of dirty clothes on the floor over there. Please put them in the washing machine. ➢ pile (v) ❖ σωρός, στοίβα
14.121 store (n) – supply of sth that is waiting to be used • The villagers always keep a large store of food in case the village gets snowed in. ➢ store (v), storage (n) ❖ απόθεμα
14.122 go without (phr v) – not have but survive • You can go without food for a few days, but you can’t go without water. (verb) πορεύομαι δίχως (κάτι), τη βγάζω χωρίς…

14.123 keep out (phr v) – not allow to enter • Let’s close the window and keep out the mosquitoes. (verb) δεν αφήνω κάποιον/κάτι να μπει μέσα

14.124 lay out (phr v) – arrange neatly • She laid out her clothes on the bed before putting them in the suitcase. (verb) παρατάσσω, εκθέτω

14.125 let out (phr v) – release, allow to go free • It will be a very long time before they let the armed robber out of jail. / I opened the door to the yard and let the dog out. (verb) αφήνω κτ/να βγει έξω.

14.126 play back (phr v) – replay a recorded sound • He recorded his daughter singing a song, then played it back to her. (verb) playback (n) ξαναπαίζω, επαναλαμβάνω

14.127 put on (phr v) – gain (weight) • You’re too thin. You should put on some weight. (verb) βάζω, παίρνω (βάρος)

14.128 set down (phr v) – record on paper, write down • He set down everything that happened, so that he would have an exact record of it later. (verb) καταγράφω, σημειώνω

14.129 set out (phr v) – begin a journey • They set out for London the next day. (verb) ξεκινώ (ταξίδι)

14.130 stand for (phr v) – represent, mean • The initials USA stand for the United States of America. (verb) αντιπροσωπεύω, σημαίνω

14.131 wipe out (phr v) – destroy completely • If illegal hunting is not controlled, it will wipe out the elephant population here. (verb) εξαφανίζω, εξολοθρεύω

---

### Prepositions 2 (page 244)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gather</td>
<td>gather round sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protect</td>
<td>protect sb from sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>arrange for sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safari</td>
<td>go on safari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give birth</td>
<td>give birth to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>in place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue eyes</td>
<td>with blue eyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete</td>
<td>compete for sth with sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threat</td>
<td>under threat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garden</td>
<td>in the garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>come from somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once/while</td>
<td>once in a while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be faced</td>
<td>be faced with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>think of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idea</td>
<td>idea of sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.138 **gone to the dogs** (idm) – fallen into a very bad state
• Since the old chef left, this restaurant has really gone to the dogs.

14.139 **smell a rat** (idm) – suspect that sth is wrong
• When he asked to borrow money for his son, she smelt a rat. She knew that he didn’t have any children.

14.140 **white elephant** (idm) – useless possession that is often expensive to maintain and difficult to resell
• Afraid that the antique car would turn out to be a white elephant, his wife wisely persuaded him not to buy it.

14.141 **nest egg** (idm) – sum of money saved for future use
• The old lady gave her nest egg to her son so that he could pay off his loan at the bank.

14.142 **a big fish** (idm) – important and powerful person
• Don’t worry, my uncle’s a big fish in this city. He’ll help us.

14.143 **at a snail’s pace** (idm) – more slowly than necessary
• Traffic was moving at a snail’s pace and I was late for my meeting.

**Similes (page 248)**

14.144 **as blind as a bat** (expr) – cannot see well
• Dad’s as blind as a bat without his contact lenses.

14.145 **as busy as a bee** (expr) – very busy
• She’s as busy as a bee planning her wedding.

14.146 **as dry as a bone** (expr) – very dry
• This sheet is as dry as a bone; it will be difficult to iron.

14.147 **as strong as a bull** (expr) – very strong
• He’s as strong as a bull, so he can help you carry the sofa up the stairs.

14.148 **as fresh as a daisy** (expr) – relaxed and ready to carry on
• You’ll feel as fresh as a daisy after a nice swim.

14.149 **as green as grass** (expr) – without any relevant experience
• On the first day of her new job, she felt as green as grass when she didn’t know how to operate the photocopier.

14.150 **as quiet as a mouse** (expr) – very quiet
• Jane has been as quiet as a mouse since she went into her bedroom. Is she asleep?

14.151 **as proud as a peacock** (expr) – very proud
• He was as proud as a peacock when his daughter became a doctor.
Vocabulary 1 (page 252)

A (page 252)

15.01 **badly** (adv) – seriously, to a great degree, very
   • He was badly hurt in the accident. ≫ **bad** (adj)
   ❖ *άσχημα*, *απαλά*, *οομένα*

15.02 **deeply** (adv) – extremely, intensely, very; to the very depth or bottom of sth/sb
   • She was deeply hurt by what you said. I hope you’ll apologise. ≫ **depth** (n),
   deepen (v), deep (adj). ≫ Opp: superficially ❖ *βαθιά*

15.03 **heavily** (adv) – a lot, greatly
   • The children are heavily dependent on their mother.
   ≫ **heavy** (adj), heaviness (n) ❖ *σε υπερβολικό βαθμό, έντονα*

15.04 **lightly** (adv) – gently, to a small degree
   • He patted her son lightly on the back to wake him up.
   ≫ **light** (adj) ❖ *απαλά, ελαφρά*

15.05 **poorly** (adv) – badly, not well
   • He did poorly in the exam because he hadn’t studied. / This is a poorly written essay; write it again please.
   ≫ **poor** (adj) ❖ *ανεπαρκώς, απαλά*

15.06 **surely** (adv) – this is used to show that you will be surprised if something is not true
   • Surely they don’t expect us to finish the work in two days?
   ≫ **sure** (adj) ❖ *άσχημα, βέβαια*

B (page 252)

15.07 **exist** (v) – live, be real
   • Little children believe that Santa Claus really exists.
   ➤ **existence** (n), existent (adj), existing (adj) ❖ *υπάρχω, διατηρώ, κρατώ*

15.08 **last** (v) – continue for a period of time
   • Cheap clothing does not last very long. / The film lasted two hours.
   ≫ **maintenance** (n), maintained (adj) ❖ *διατηρώ, συντηρώ, τηρώ*

15.09 **maintain** (v) – keep at the same level/rate
   • If you start the race too quickly, you’ll find it impossible to maintain your speed.
   ➤ **maintenance** (n), maintained (adj) ❖ *διατηρώ, συντηρώ, τηρώ*

15.10 **retain** (v) – continue to have or keep
   • He did his best to follow in his father’s footsteps and retain the family’s excellent reputation.
   ➤ **structure** (n), structural (adj) ❖ *κατασκευή, δομή*

15.11 **stay** (v) – remain, continue to be in a particular place, position or state without changing
   • It’s going to stay warm for a few more weeks; summer is not over yet. / Stay still or you’ll frighten the bird away.
   ➤ **stay** (n) ❖ *μένω, παραμένω*
E (page 253)

15.22 chief (adj) – highest in rank • As the chief executive, he is in charge of the whole company. ⇒ chief (n), chiefly (adv) • ο ηγέτης, ηγετικός, επικεφαλής

15.23 intense (adj) – strong, concentrated • The pain was so intense that she almost blacked out. / The furnace produces heat that is so intense it can easily melt metal. ⇒ intensity (n), intensify (v), intensely (adv) • έντονα

15.24 main (adj) – most important • The main reason why I walk to work is because petrol is so expensive. ⇒ mainly (adv) • κύριος, πρωτεύον

15.25 superior (adj) – better, of a higher standard • Champagne is superior to table wine. ⇒ superior (n), superiority (n) • ανώτερος

15.26 vast (adj) – enormous, very large • A vast crowd gathered outside the building. ⇒ vastly (adv), vastness (n) • τεράστιος, ααπλανικός

15.27 widespread (adj) – found or distributed over a large area or number of people • A growing number of people are against the widespread use of chemicals in agriculture. ⇒ παγιδεύς/ευρέως διαδεδομένος

F (page 253)

15.28 command (v) – be responsible for giving orders to a group of people in the army, navy, air force, police, etc • He commands the Parachute Regiment. ⇒ command (n), commander (n), commanding (adj) • διατάζω, κυριάρχης, προστάζω

15.29 compel (v) – force sb to do sth • A guilty conscience compelled the murderer to confess. ⇒ compulsion (n), compulsive (adj), compulsively (adv) • αναγκάζω, υποχρεώνω, εξαναγκάζω

15.30 impose (v) – make sb endure sth unpleasant or unwelcome • The government are unpopular after imposing a number of new taxes on its citizens. ⇒ imposition (n), imposing (adj) • επιβάλλω

15.31 need to (v) – must • We need to tidy up the house because we are having a dinner party tonight. ⇒ need (n) • πρέπει, είναι ανάγκη να

15.32 order (v) – 1. request sth to be supplied, made, or served • For dinner, she ordered steak and salad. / We ordered a new dictionary online. 2. tell sb to do sth in a firm way • The general ordered the soldiers to prepare to attack. 3. put things in order (i.e. in a logical arrangement) • She is trying to order her life in a way that will allow her to relax more and not work so hard. ⇒ order (n) • 1. παραγγελία, παραγγέλω 2. διατάσεως 3. ρυθμίσεως

15.33 require (v) – 1. need sth/sb for a particular purpose • The job requires a lot of travelling, so she decided not to apply for it. 2. oblige sb to do sth, insist that sb do sth • The boss requires all new employees to watch a video about the company’s history and goals. ⇒ requirement (n), required (adj) • 1. αναγκάζω 2. υποχρεώνω

G (page 253)

15.34 greatly (adv) – very much, to a considerable or high degree • His driving skills will improve greatly after he’s had a few driving lessons. ⇒ greatness (n), great (adj) • πολύ

15.35 harshly (adv) – in a strict, cruel way • I think his father treats him rather harshly, considering he’s always such a good boy. ⇒ harsh (n), harshness (n) • αισθητά, αφίστρα, σκληρά

15.36 hugely (adv) – to a very great degree • The film was hugely successful. In fact it was a much bigger hit than anyone thought it would be. / The diamond ring he bought her must have been hugely expensive! ⇒ huge (adj) • μεγάλα βαθύματα

15.37 largely (adv) – mainly, chiefly • They came up with a new ad campaign largely in an effort to increase sales. ⇒ largeness (n), large (adj) • κυρίως

15.38 properly (adv) – in a correct or suitable way • The air-conditioner isn’t working properly; it’s making much too much noise. ⇒ proper (adj) • σωστά

15.39 strongly (adv) – with great strength or force • He strongly believes in everyone’s right to exercise freedom of speech. ⇒ strength (n), strong (adj) • δυνατά, έντονα, ακράδαντα

H (page 253)

15.40 detect (v) – discover, sense the presence of sth • Police detected traces of gunpowder on the suspect’s clothing. ⇒ detection (n), detective (n), (un)detected (adj) • ανακαλύπτω

15.41 determine (v) – find out by investigating or calculating • The diagnostic tests will determine whether or not the patient has cancer. / After a jury determines that a defendant is guilty, the judge determines what the punishment should be. ⇒ determination (n), determined (adj) • προσδιορίζω, υπολογίζω, καθορίζω

15.42 feel (v) – experience an emotion • When she realised what she had done, she felt awful. ⇒ feeling (n) • αισθάνομαι, νιώθω

15.43 infer (v) – come to a logical conclusion by using indirect (rather than directly stated) information • The most difficult type of reading comprehension questions are those where you must read between the lines and infer information that is not directly stated. ⇒ inference (n), inferential (adj) • συμπεράνω, συνάγω

15.44 sense (v) – become aware of sth through one’s senses or instinct • She could sense that her son was upset about something. ⇒ sense (n), sensation (n) • διασταθούμενη, έχω την αίσθησή (στο)
Phrasal Verbs 1 (page 254)

15.45 break off (phr v) – stop talking • Half way through the story, he broke off when he saw that his little boy had fallen asleep. ✦ σταματώ από το τέλος της ιστορίας, έκανε κλήρωση όταν είδε ότι ο μικρός αγοράκι του έπεσε να ύπνει.

15.46 clear up (phr v) – make sth tidy • Please can you clear up the mess in the kitchen when you’ve finished cooking. ✦ τακτοποιώ, διακόπτω

15.47 cut in (phr v) – interrupt (sb talking) • Sorry to cut in while you are talking, but you have an urgent telephone call. ✦ διακόπτω

15.48 cut out (phr v) – stop doing sth, esp. because it is harmful or annoying • The doctor told him to cut out smoking. ✦ κόβω, σταματώ

15.49 go with (phr v) – be part of • Sleepless nights and dirty nappies go with being a new mother. ✦ συμβαδίζω, αποτελώ αναπόσπαστο μέρος

15.50 hand over (phr v) – give, surrender sth to sb • The bank robber was surrounded by police and was forced to hand over his gun. ✦ παραδίνω, δίνω

15.51 have round (phr v) – have visitors at home • We’re having John’s parents round for dinner tonight. ✦ έχω επισκέψεις

15.52 help out (phr v) – give assistance • Can you help me out? I need someone to look after the children for an hour. ✦ βοηθώ κάποιον να βγει από τη δύσκολη θέση

15.53 hold back (phr v) – restrain, stop sb from moving forward • She tried to run after the car, but her friends held her back. ✦ παρεμποδίζω, στέκομαι εμπόδιο

15.54 set aside (phr v) – save, keep for a special purpose or use • Her parents began setting aside money for her college education when she was born. ✦ βάζω στην ακριβώς

Prepositions 1 (page 254)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in return</td>
<td>in return for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be superior</td>
<td>be superior to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time limit</td>
<td>within the time limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be kind</td>
<td>be kind to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the past</td>
<td>from the past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>tell from sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voice</td>
<td>in sb’s voice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be amazed</td>
<td>be amazed at sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next</td>
<td>next to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe</td>
<td>believe in sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make a success</td>
<td>make a success of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring sth back</td>
<td>bring sth back from somewhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.55 in return for (prep phr) – in exchange for • He offered to help me move next weekend in return for a meal at his favourite pizza restaurant.

15.56 believe in (phr v) – have faith or confidence in the truth, existence, or rightness of sth (e.g., a person, idea, or course of action) • The boss believes in you, which is why he made you sales manager. ➢ believe (n), believable (adj), believably (adv) ➢ πιστεύω σε κάτι, έχω εμπιστοσύνη σε κάτι.

15.57 make a success of (sth) (expr) – be successful in (sth) • I hope she makes a success of her new restaurant. ➢ σημειώνω επιτυχία, είμαι επιτυχημένος σε κάτι.

Use of English Practice 1 (page 255)

Items 1-12
1 C  For A and D, see Vocabulary 1: F.
15.58 propose (that) (v) – suggest that, offer for consideration • The sales manager proposed that the company increase its sales staff to boost sales. ➢ proposal (n), proposition (n) ➢ προτείνω
2 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1:C.
3 B, C  For A and D, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
15.59 take up (phr v) – start doing something new • Sally has just taken up golf. ➢ ξεκινώ, αρχίζω (μια δραστηριότητα)
15.60 cater for (sb) (phr v) – provide what is needed or wanted • The magazine mainly caters for young women, so all the articles are about things that interest them. ➢ φροντίζω για την κάλυψη αναγκών ή την ικανοποίηση γούστων
4 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: E.
5 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: G.
6 C, D  For A, see Prepositions 1.
15.61 deal (n) – agreement • They are involved in some important business deals. ➢ deal (v) (εμπόρικη) συμβάσεις, συμφωνία
15.62 contract (n) – official legal agreement between two or more parties • If you get the job, make sure they give you a contract. ➢ συμβόλαιο, σύμβαση, συμφωνητικό
7 For A, B, C and D, see Vocabulary 1: D.
8 D  For C, see Phrasal Verbs 1 (Unit 13)
15.63 introduce (v) – cause something to exist for the first time • The college has just introduced a new set of rules. ➢ introduction (n) ➢ (πρώτο) παρουσιάζω, καθιέρωσα
9 For B, see Phrasal Verbs 1.
10 C  For A, B and D, see Vocabulary 1: A and G.
15.64 sparsely (adv) – thinly spread out • The area was sparsely populated with only a few houses here and there. ➢ sparse (adj) ➢ αραιά
11 C  For A, B and D, see Vocabulary 1: B.
15.65 care (for) (phr v) – look after • He couldn’t care for his old mother properly, so he hired a nurse to help him. ➢ care (n), caring (adj) ➢ φροντίζω
12 B, D  For A and C, see Vocabulary 1: H.
15.66 accept (v) – recognise as being true or right • She couldn’t accept that she would never walk again. ➢ acceptance (n), acceptable (adj), acceptably (adv). ➢ Opp: reject ➢ δεχόμαι
15.67 fulfil (v) – satisfy, complete • He accepted the well-paid job because he knew it would fill his financial needs. ➢ fulfilment (n), fulfilling (adj) ➢ εκπληρώνω

Vocabulary 2 (page 258)

A (page 258)
15.68 accept (responsibility for sth) (idm) – take the blame (for sth), say one is at fault for sth • It’s understandable that a parent would want to accept responsibility for a crime that a child commits. • Tom broke the window, so he should accept responsibility for what he did. ➢ παίρνω την ευθύνη για κτ
15.69 accept (v) – allow to become part of sth • When her father remarried, it was difficult for Jane to accept his new wife. ➢ acceptance (n), acceptable (adj) ➢ αποδέχομαι
15.70 conform (to) (v) – follow generally accepted rules or standards • New buildings must conform to official safety standards. ➢ conformity (n) ➢ συμμορφώνομαι, συμφωνώ
15.71 devote (sth to/oneself to) (v) – give or commit yourself (or your time, energy, effort, etc.) to sth
   ➢ devotion (n), devoted (adj) ◆ αφιερώματα, αφοσιωματικά

15.72 fit (in) (phr v) – feel like you belong somewhere because you are like the people around you
   ➢ The other people at the party were much older than me but I tried to fit in. ◆ ταξιάρχεια

15.73 meet the needs (expr) – satisfy the requirements
   ➢ The small supermarket meets the needs of the local community. ◆ κανονιστικά τις ανάγκες

15.74 show (one’s) appreciation (expr) – show sb you are grateful for sth they have done
   ➢ She showed her appreciation for his help by giving him a present. ◆ εκπροσώπων την εκτίμησή μου

C (page 258)

15.80 brief (adj) – continuing for a short time
   ➢ I only have time for a brief chat before I have to go. ◆ břifně (adv) ◆ svoučem

15.81 concise (adj) – short and clear, brief, expressing a lot in a few words
   ➢ The boss has a bad habit of giving long speeches. I wish he would be more concise. ◆ συνέκτυπο, συνεπικοίνωση

15.82 inferior (adj) – low or lower in quality, importance, etc.
   ➢ It’s an inferior product from an inferior company; I’d never buy it again. ◆ ανιερότερος

15.83 short story (n) – written story not containing many words or pages
   ➢ He bought me a book of short stories. ◆ συντομότερα δημιουργία

D (page 258)

15.84 slight (adj) – small, minor, not very important or noticeable
   ➢ she had a slight headache this morning, but it quickly passed after she took an aspirin. ◆ σωματικός, ασθενείς, επιθέτο

15.85 assure (v) – tell sb that sth will definitely happen or that sth is definitely true so that they are less worried
   ➢ I can assure you that I will be back at home by 10 p.m. Don’t worry. ◆ επιβεβαιώνω

15.86 attain (v) – succeed in getting sth, achieve with great effort
   ➢ Women have worked hard to attain high management positions. ◆ επιτεύχθηκε, καταφέρθηκε, πραγματοποιήθηκε

15.87 attribute (v) – say that a situation or event is caused by (sth else)
   ➢ He attributed his success to luck rather than to hard work. ◆ επιτευχθέν, επιβεβαιώθηκε

15.88 justify (v) – show that there is a good reason or logical explanation for sth
   ➢ Nothing you say will justify his rude behaviour; there was just no excuse for it! ◆ επιβεβαιώνω, επιβεβαιώθηκε

15.89 verify (v) – check or confirm sth; make sure that sth is true, valid or correct
   ➢ Good reporters always verify their facts before finalising a story. ◆ επιβεβαιώθηκε, επιβεβαιώθηκε

E (page 259)

15.90 casual acquaintance (n) – sb who you know but are not good friends with
   ➢ I don’t know John well. I’ve met him a couple of times at parties, so I suppose he’s a casual acquaintance rather than a friend. ◆ επαφή, επαφήκε

15.91 familiar (adj) – seen, heard or experienced before
   ➢ I don’t remember when. ◆ επαφήκε – have we met before?

15.92 ordinary (adj) – normal, not special
   ➢ It was just an ordinary table, so I couldn’t understand why it was so expensive. ◆ κοινός, συνηθισμένος

15.93 plain (adj) – obvious, clear
   ➢ It’s plain that his job is very important to him; he’s only happy when he’s at work. ◆ φανέρως, σαφές

15.94 routine (adj) – usual
   ➢ She goes for routine checks to the dentist every six months. ◆ επαφήκε, επαφήκε

15.95 compensation (n) – payment for loss, damage or services not provided
   ➢ He received £10,000 compensation for an injury he received at work. ◆ επιδοτήθηκε, επιδοτήθηκε, επιδοτήθηκε

131
15.96 contract (n) – official legal agreement between two or more parties • If you get the job, make sure they give you a contract. ✤ συμβόλαιο, σύμβαση, συμφωνητικό

15.97 deal (n) – agreement • They are involved in some important business deals. ➢ deal (v) ✤ (εμπορική) συναλλαγή, συμφωνία

15.98 export (n) – a product that is sold to another country • Olive oil is one of Greece’s most important exports. ➢ export (v), exporter (n) ➢ Opp: import (n)

15.99 import (n) – a product that is brought in from another country • Imports from China tend to be more affordable than from other countries. ➢ import (v), importation (n), importer ➢ Opp: export (n)

15.100 trade (n) – the buying, selling and exchange of goods and services • There’s been a significant increase in trade between the two countries. ➢ trade (v), trading (n), trader (n) ✤ εμπόριο, εμπορικές συναλλαγές

15.101 complicated (adj) – not simple; difficult to do or understand • His instructions were so complicated that we got lost trying to find his house. ➢ complication (n), complicated (v), complicating (adj) ✤ περίπλοκος

15.102 extraordinary (adj) – very unusual and surprising • It was an extraordinary wedding: the bride wore red and the groom was wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

15.103 intricate (adj) – complicated, with many small parts or details • We saw the remains of a beautiful mosaic floor with intricate patterns. ➢ intricacy (n), intricately (adv) ✤ πολύπλοκος, πολυπλοκός

15.104 tricky (adj) – difficult to do or deal with • The teacher warned us that there were several tricky questions on the test. ➢ trick (n, v) ✤ νοπνός, δούλες, δούλος, νουτέλες κόλπον (για να ληφθεί)

H (page 259)

15.105 confine (to) (v) – keep or restrict within certain limits • The prisoner was confined to his cell. ➢ confinement (n), confined (adj) ✤ περιοριζόμαι

15.106 refrain (from sth/doing sth) (v) – stop oneself from doing sth, esp. sth that one would like to do • Students must refrain from talking during an exam. / Hospital visitors must refrain from smoking. ➢ περιορίζω, απέχω

15.107 restrain (v) – control or prevent from doing sth, usually by force; hold back • He had to be restrained when he saw the man who had punched his son. ➢ restrain (n), restrained (adj), restraining (adj) ➢ συγκρατώ το θυμό μου, συγκρατώσω

15.108 restrict (v) – limit, keep within a certain amount, area or size • His heart condition restricts the amount of exercise he can do. ➢ restriction (n), restricting (adj) ✤ περιορίζω

Phrasal Verbs 2 (page 260)

15.109 come out (phr v) – be revealed (usually after sth has been kept secret) • After she had failed her exams, it eventually came out that she had been taking drugs. ➢ αποκαλύπτω, αποκάλυπτομαι

15.110 rule out (phr v) – exclude, decide not to consider sth as a possibility • Despite the suicide note found near the body, the police are not yet willing to rule out the possibility of murder. ➢ αποκλείω, εξαγωγή

15.111 run over (phr v) – (of vehicles or drivers) hit and knock sb/sth down, drive over sb so that they are killed or injured • The child ran into the street, but luckily the driver saw him and managed not to run him over. ➢ (για άσκηση) κτυπώ, πατώ, κτυπώ και ρίχνω κάτω

15.112 sit up (phr v) – not go to bed • They sat up late into the night doing their homework and were exhausted the next day. ➢ ξυπνώ, μένω, ξυπνήσω

15.113 stand up for (phr v) – defend, support • Thank you for standing up for me when the boss accused me unfairly. / He was an environmental scientist before becoming an MP, so you can depend on him to stand up for environmental laws. ➢ υπερασπίζομαι, υπερασπίζω

15.114 stir up (phr v) – cause (trouble, unrest, etc) • She’s known for stirring up trouble amongst her work colleagues, so don’t employ her. ➢ υποκοπάρα, ξεφοβά, ξεφοβάω

15.115 take to (phr v) – begin doing sth as a habit • I’m worried about him. He has taken to staying out late and not doing his homework. ➢ το ρίχνω σε κτ, μου γίνεται συνήθεια

15.116 turn up (phr v) – arrive, appear • They turned up at my house in the middle of the night. ➢ εμφανίζω, (κάπου), φθάνω
15.117 **work up** (phr v) – develop (an appetite, a thirst, enthusiasm, a sweat, etc) • *I had worked up a thirst after a hard game of tennis* ☠ αναπτύσσω

15.118 **write up** (phr v) – rewrite (notes) in full • *After the lecture, I went home to write up my notes before I forgot what the lecturer had said.* ☠ καθαρογράφω

### Preposition 2 (page 260)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key word(s)</th>
<th>Phrase with preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td>pass sth to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get/hand</td>
<td>get out of hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means</td>
<td>by means of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bit</td>
<td>a bit of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effect</td>
<td>in effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the subject</td>
<td>on the subject of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in view</td>
<td>in view of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with regard</td>
<td>with regard to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knack</td>
<td>knack of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deter sb</td>
<td>deter sb from doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprise</td>
<td>to my surprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in connection</td>
<td>in connection with sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.119 **get out of hand** (idm) – become difficult to control • Football fans sometimes get out of hand when their team wins. ☠ Εξερευνάμε από κάθε έλεγχο, γίνομε ασύδοτοι

15.120 **by means of** (idm) – using • *We travelled from England to France by means of the Channel Tunnel (the underwater tunnel that passes under the English Channel).* ☠ δια μέσου

15.121 **in effect** (idm) – actually, in practical terms • *The military government calls itself a democracy, but it is, in effect, a dictatorship.* ☠ στην ουσία

15.122 **in view of (sth)** (prep phr) – considering, bearing in mind, taking into account • *In view of his poor grades, it is unlikely that he will get into a top university.* ☠ λαμβάνοντας υπόψη

15.123 **with regard to** (prep phr) – concerning, regarding • *The boss would like to speak to you with regard to the new sales campaign.* ☠ σε σχέση με, αναφορικά με

15.124 **knack (of)** – special skill • *He has a knack of finding a good bargain, so take him shopping with you.* ☠ ικανότητα, ταλέντο

15.125 **deter (sb) from** (phr v) – prevent or discourage (sb from doing sth) • *They bought a fierce-looking dog to deter burglars from breaking into their house.* ☠ αποτρέπω, αποθαρρύνω

15.126 **to my surprise** (idm) – surprisingly (I did not expect this to happen) • *To my surprise, I won the competition.* ☠ αποτρέπω, αποθαρρύνω

15.127 **in connection with** (prep phr) – with reference to • *A man was arrested in connection with the girl’s murder.* / In connection with your job application of June 15th, we regret to tell you that the position has already been filled. ☠ προς εκπέμπω μου, σε σχέση με

---

133
Idioms

15.128 **know the score** (idm) – be aware of all the facts about a situation • *I know the score: if I don’t work hard this year, I will fail my exams.* ❖ ἔξερω τι παίζε, είμαι ενήμερος για την ολή κατάσταση

15.129 **have my hands full** (idm) – be very busy • *With a full-time job and a book to write, she really had her hands full.* ❖ είμαι φορτωμένος, απασχολημένος

15.130 **the writing is on the wall** (idm) – things are going to get worse • *The writing is on the wall for many businesses as a result of the economic crisis.* ❖ (φράση από τη Βίβλο) κακό προμήνυμα, σημεία των καιρών

15.131 **with flying colours** (idm) – very easily and successfully • *He passed the test with flying colours; in fact, he came top of the class.* ❖ με μεγάλη επιτυχία

15.132 **sit on the fence** (idm) – refuse to give an opinion • *It was safer to sit on the fence when his mother and his wife had an argument.* ❖ παραμένω αμέτοχος

15.133 **not my cup of tea** (idm) – not something I’m interested in • *Sitting on a hot beach is not my cup of tea; I’d rather go to a museum.* ❖ δεν είναι και το καθιστέρό μου